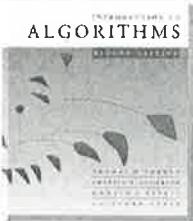


Introduction to Algorithms

6.046J/18.401J



LECTURE 1

Analysis of Algorithms

- Insertion sort
- Asymptotic analysis
- Merge sort
- Recurrences

Prof. Charles E. Leiserson

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

Course information

1. Staff
2. Distance learning
3. Prerequisites
4. Lectures
5. Recitations
6. Handouts
7. Textbook
8. Course website
9. Extra help
10. Registration
11. Problem sets
12. Describing algorithms
13. Grading policy
14. Collaboration policy

September 7, 2005

Introduction to Algorithms

L1.2



Analysis of algorithms

The theoretical study of computer-program performance and resource usage.

What's more important than performance?

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| • modularity | • user-friendliness |
| • correctness | • programmer time |
| • maintainability | • simplicity |
| • functionality | • extensibility |
| • robustness | • reliability |

September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

Introduction to Algorithms

L1.3

Why study algorithms and performance?

- Algorithms help us to understand *scalability*.
- Performance often draws the line between what is feasible and what is impossible.
- Algorithmic mathematics provides a *language* for talking about program behavior.
- Performance is the *currency* of computing.
- The lessons of program performance generalize to other computing resources.
- Speed is fun!

September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L1.4



The problem of sorting

Input: sequence $\langle a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n \rangle$ of numbers.

Output: permutation $\langle a'_1, a'_2, \dots, a'_n \rangle$ such that $a'_1 \leq a'_2 \leq \dots \leq a'_n$.

Example:

Input: 8 2 4 9 3 6

Output: 2 3 4 6 8 9

September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

Introduction to Algorithms

L1.5



Insertion sort

“pseudocode”

```
INSERTION-SORT( $A, n$ )     $\triangleright A[1..n]$ 
  for  $j \leftarrow 2$  to  $n$ 
    do  $key \leftarrow A[j]$ 
         $i \leftarrow j - 1$ 
        while  $i > 0$  and  $A[i] > key$ 
          do  $A[i + 1] \leftarrow A[i]$ 
               $i \leftarrow i - 1$ 
         $A[i + 1] = key$ 
```

September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L1.6



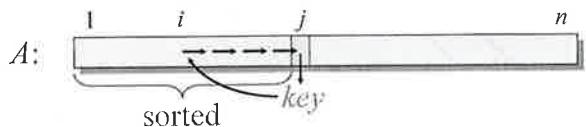
Insertion sort

“pseudocode”

```

    INSERTION-SORT ( $A, n$ )       $\triangleright A[1..n]$ 
        for  $j \leftarrow 2$  to  $n$ 
            do  $key \leftarrow A[j]$ 
                 $i \leftarrow j - 1$ 
                while  $i > 0$  and  $A[i] > key$ 
                    do  $A[i+1] \leftarrow A[i]$ 
                         $i \leftarrow i - 1$ 
                 $A[i+1] = key$ 

```



September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.7

Example of insertion sort

September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.8



Example of insertion sort

September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.9

Example of insertion sort

September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.10



Example of insertion sort

September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.11

Example of insertion sort

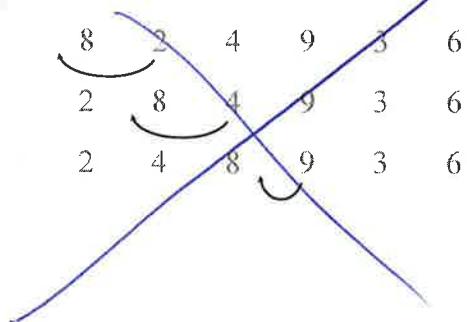
September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.12



Example of insertion sort



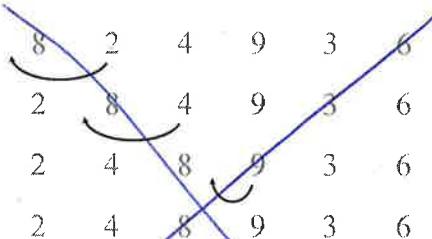
September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.13



Example of insertion sort



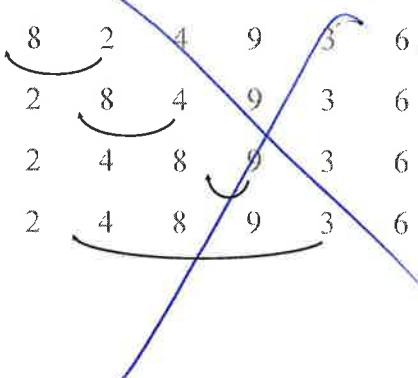
September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.14



Example of insertion sort



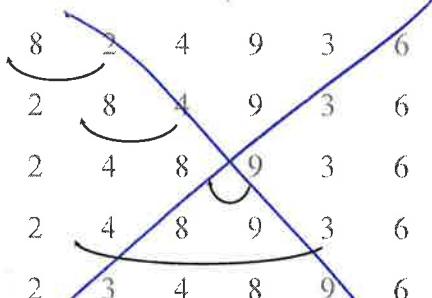
September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.15



Example of insertion sort



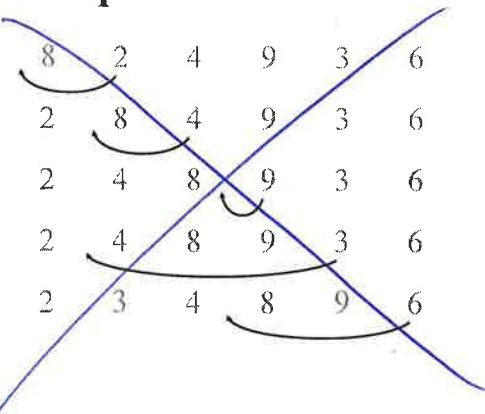
September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.16



Example of insertion sort



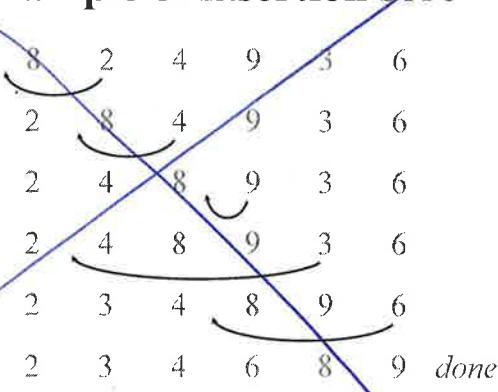
September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.17



Example of insertion sort



September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.18



Running time

- The running time depends on the input: an already sorted sequence is easier to sort.
- Parameterize the running time by the size of the input, since short sequences are easier to sort than long ones.
- Generally, we seek upper bounds on the running time, because everybody likes a guarantee.

September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.19



Kinds of analyses

- 1) Worst-case: (usually) focus on
- $T(n)$ = maximum time of algorithm on any input of size n .
- 2) Average-case: (sometimes)
- $T(n)$ = expected time of algorithm over all inputs of size n .
 - Need assumption of statistical distribution of inputs.
- 3) Best-case: (bogus)
- Cheat with a slow algorithm that works fast on some input.

September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.20



Machine-independent time

What is insertion sort's worst-case time?

- It depends on the speed of our computer:
 - relative speed (on the same machine),
 - absolute speed (on different machines).

BIG IDEA:

- Ignore machine-dependent constants.
- Look at growth of $T(n)$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$.

"Asymptotic Analysis"

September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.21



Θ -notation

Math:

$$\Theta(g(n)) = \{ f(n) : \text{there exist positive constants } c_1, c_2, \text{ and } n_0 \text{ such that } 0 \leq c_1 g(n) \leq f(n) \leq c_2 g(n) \text{ for all } n \geq n_0 \}$$

Engineering:

- Drop low-order terms; ignore leading constants.
- Example: $3n^3 + 90n^2 - 5n + 6046 = \Theta(n^3)$

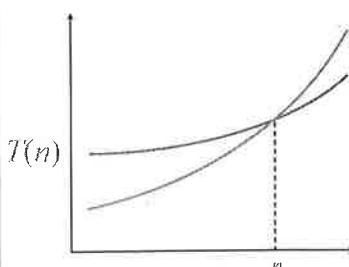
September 7, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.22



Asymptotic performance

When n gets large enough, a $\Theta(n^2)$ algorithm *always* beats a $\Theta(n^3)$ algorithm.



- We shouldn't ignore asymptotically slower algorithms, however.
- Real-world design situations often call for a careful balancing of engineering objectives.
- Asymptotic analysis is a useful tool to help to structure our thinking.

September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.23



Insertion sort analysis

Worst case: Input reverse sorted.

$$T(n) = \sum_{j=2}^n \Theta(j) = \Theta(n^2) \quad [\text{arithmetic series}]$$

Average case: All permutations equally likely.

$$T(n) = \sum_{j=2}^n \Theta(j/2) = \Theta(n^2)$$

Is insertion sort a fast sorting algorithm?

- Moderately so, for small n .
- Not at all, for large n .

September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.24



Merge sort

MERGE-SORT $A[1..n]$

1. If $n = 1$, done.
2. Recursively sort $A[1.. \lceil n/2 \rceil]$ and $A[\lceil n/2 \rceil + 1..n]$.
3. “Merge” the 2 sorted lists.

Key subroutine: MERGE

September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.25



Merging two sorted arrays

20 12
13 11
7 9
2 1

September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.26



Merging two sorted arrays

20 12
13 11
7 9
2 1

September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.27



Merging two sorted arrays

20 12 | 20 12
13 11 | 13 11
7 9 | 7 9
2 | 2
1

September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.28



Merging two sorted arrays

20 12 | 20 12
13 11 | 13 11
7 9 | 7 9
2 | 2
1 | 2

September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.29



Merging two sorted arrays

20 12 | 20 12 | 20 12
13 11 | 13 11 | 13 11
7 9 | 7 9 | 7 9
2 | 2 | 2
1 | 2 |

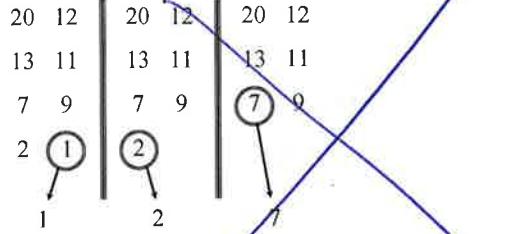
September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.30



Merging two sorted arrays



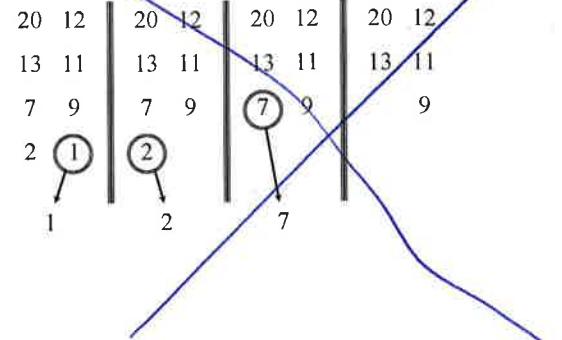
September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.31



Merging two sorted arrays



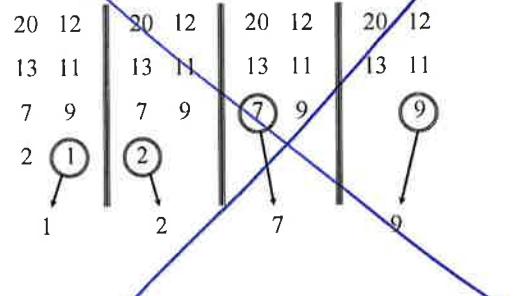
September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.32



Merging two sorted arrays



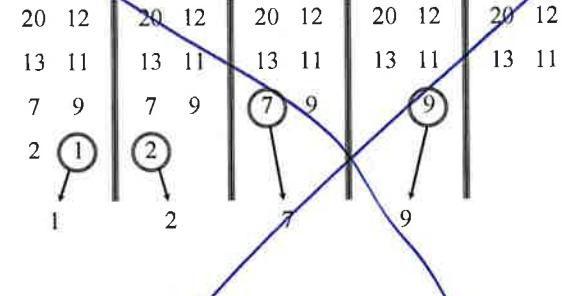
September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.33



Merging two sorted arrays



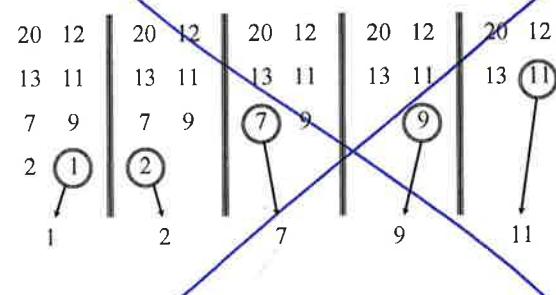
September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.34



Merging two sorted arrays



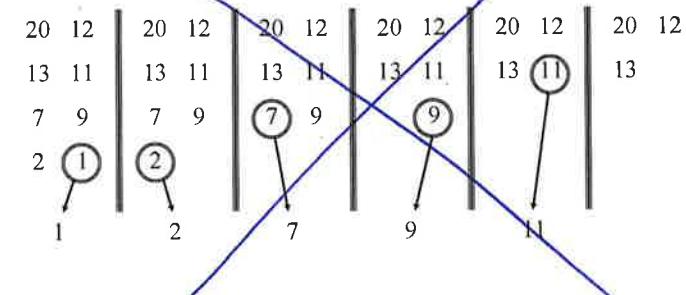
September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.35



Merging two sorted arrays

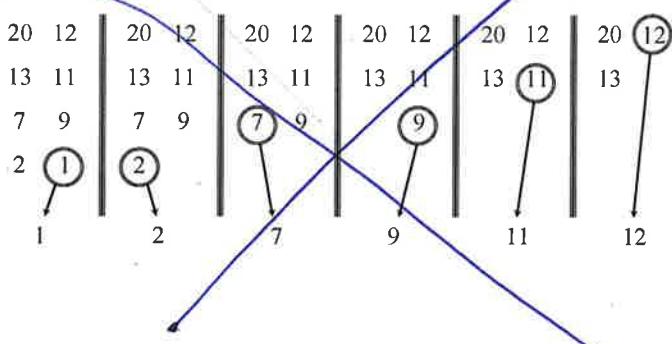


September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.36

Merging two sorted arrays

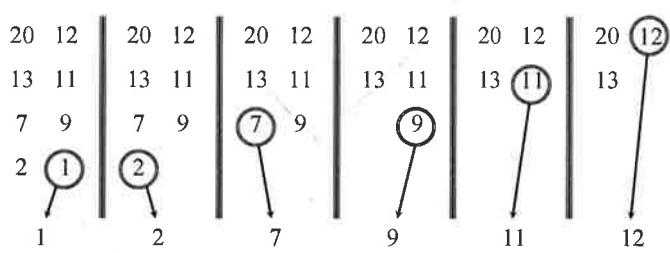


September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.37

Merging two sorted arrays



September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.38

Time = $\Theta(n)$ to merge a total of n elements (linear time).

Analyzing merge sort



$T(n)$

$\Theta(1)$

Abuse $2T(n/2)$

$\Theta(n)$

MERGE-SORT $A[1 \dots n]$

1. If $n = 1$, done.
2. Recursively sort $A[1 \dots \lceil n/2 \rceil]$ and $A[\lceil n/2 \rceil + 1 \dots n]$.
3. "Merge" the 2 sorted lists

Sloppiness: Should be $T(\lceil n/2 \rceil) + T(\lfloor n/2 \rfloor)$, but it turns out not to matter asymptotically.

September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.39

Recurrence for merge sort

$$T(n) = \begin{cases} \Theta(1) & \text{if } n = 1; \\ 2T(n/2) + \Theta(n) & \text{if } n > 1. \end{cases}$$

- We shall usually omit stating the base case when $T(n) = \Theta(1)$ for sufficiently small n , but only when it has no effect on the asymptotic solution to the recurrence.
- CLRS and Lecture 2 provide several ways to find a good upper bound on $T(n)$.

September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.40

Recursion tree

Solve $T(n) = 2T(n/2) + cn$, where $c > 0$ is constant.



September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.41

Recursion tree

Solve $T(n) = 2T(n/2) + cn$, where $c > 0$ is constant.

$T(n)$

September 7, 2005

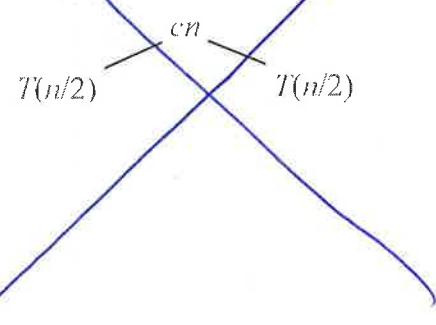
Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.42



Recursion tree

Solve $T(n) = 2T(n/2) + cn$, where $c > 0$ is constant.



September 7, 2005

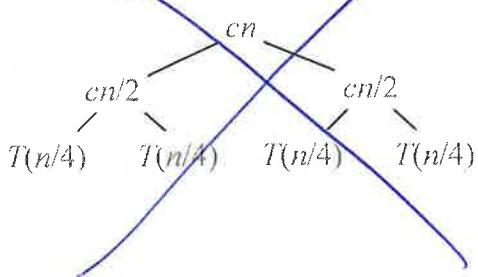
Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.43



Recursion tree

Solve $T(n) = 2T(n/2) + cn$, where $c > 0$ is constant.



September 7, 2005

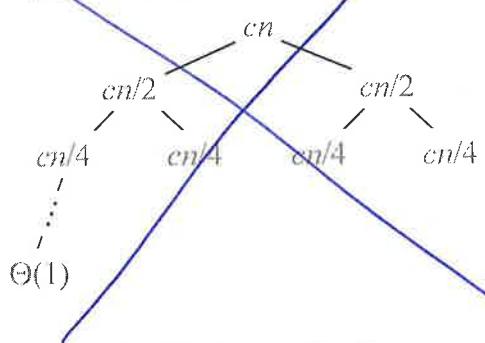
Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.44



Recursion tree

Solve $T(n) = 2T(n/2) + cn$, where $c > 0$ is constant.



September 7, 2005

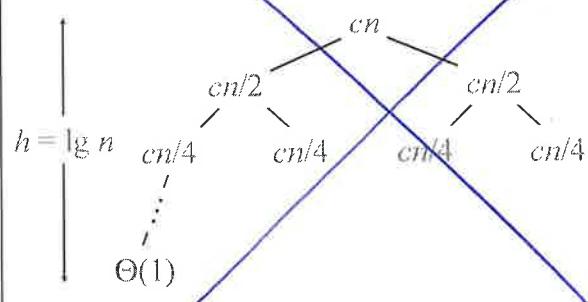
Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.45



Recursion tree

Solve $T(n) = 2T(n/2) + cn$, where $c > 0$ is constant.



September 7, 2005

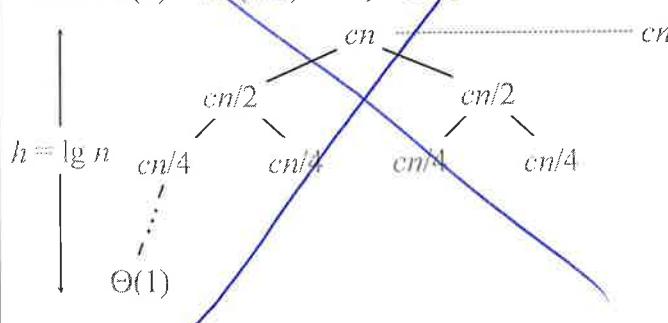
Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.46



Recursion tree

Solve $T(n) = 2T(n/2) + cn$, where $c > 0$ is constant.



September 7, 2005

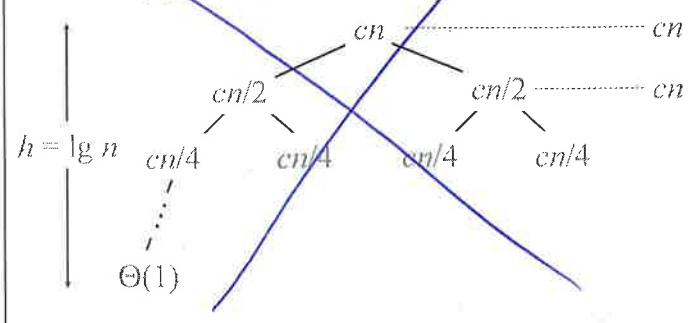
Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.47



Recursion tree

Solve $T(n) = 2T(n/2) + cn$, where $c > 0$ is constant.



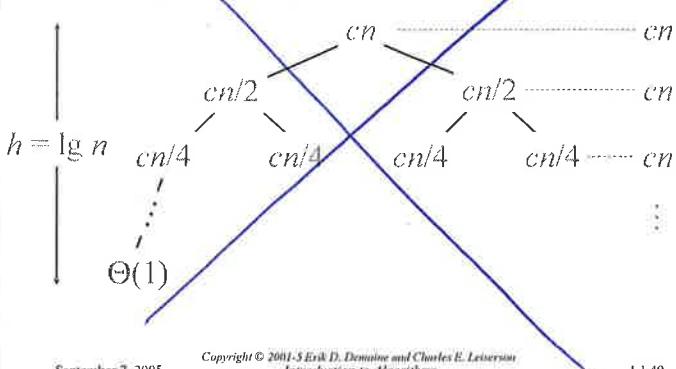
September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

L1.48

Recursion tree

Solve $T(n) = 2T(n/2) + cn$, where $c > 0$ is constant.

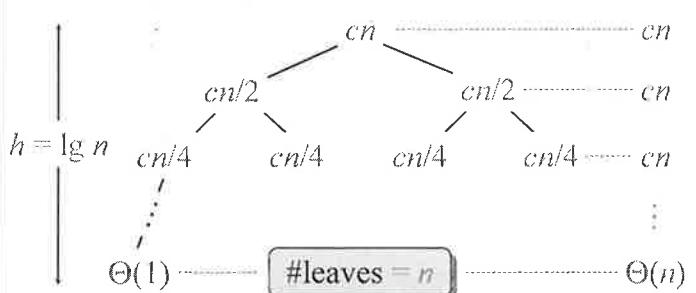


September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

Recursion tree

Solve $T(n) = 2T(n/2) + cn$, where $c > 0$ is constant.

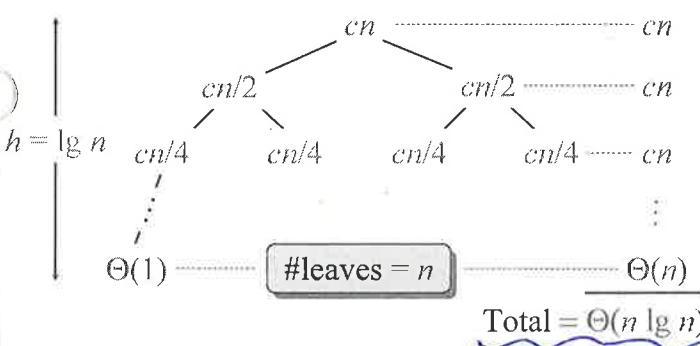


September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

Recursion tree

Solve $T(n) = 2T(n/2) + cn$, where $c > 0$ is constant.



September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

Conclusions

merge sort

insertion sort

- $\Theta(n \lg n)$ grows more slowly than $\Theta(n^2)$.
- Therefore, merge sort asymptotically beats insertion sort in the worst case.
- In practice, merge sort beats insertion sort for $n > 30$ or so.
- Go test it out for yourself!

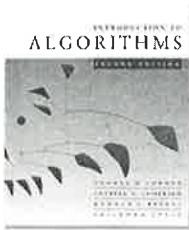
September 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson
Introduction to Algorithms

$L1.52$

Introduction to Algorithms

6.046J/18.401J



LECTURE 2

Asymptotic Notation

- O -, Ω -, and Θ -notation

Recurrences

- Substitution method
- Iterating the recurrence
- Recursion tree
- Master method

Prof. Erik Demaine

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.1

Asymptotic notation

O -notation (upper bounds):



We write $f(n) = O(g(n))$ if there exist constants $c > 0$, $n_0 > 0$ such that $0 \leq f(n) \leq cg(n)$ for all $n \geq n_0$.

September 12, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.2

Asymptotic notation

O -notation (upper bounds):

We write $f(n) = O(g(n))$ if there exist constants $c > 0$, $n_0 > 0$ such that $0 \leq f(n) \leq cg(n)$ for all $n \geq n_0$.

EXAMPLE: $2n^2 = O(n^3)$ ($c = 1, n_0 = 2$)

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.3

Asymptotic notation

O -notation (upper bounds):

We write $f(n) = O(g(n))$ if there exist constants $c > 0$, $n_0 > 0$ such that $0 \leq f(n) \leq cg(n)$ for all $n \geq n_0$.

EXAMPLE: $2n^2 = O(n^3)$ ($c = 1, n_0 = 2$)

September 12, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.4

Asymptotic notation

O -notation (upper bounds):

We write $f(n) = O(g(n))$ if there exist constants $c > 0$, $n_0 > 0$ such that $0 \leq f(n) \leq cg(n)$ for all $n \geq n_0$.

EXAMPLE: $2n^2 = O(n^3)$ ($c = 1, n_0 = 2$)

functions, not values

funny, "one-way" equality

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.5

Set definition of O -notation

$O(g(n)) = \{ f(n) : \text{there exist constants } c > 0, n_0 > 0 \text{ such that } 0 \leq f(n) \leq cg(n) \text{ for all } n \geq n_0 \}$

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.6



Set definition of O-notation

$O(g(n)) = \{ f(n) : \text{there exist constants } c > 0, n_0 > 0 \text{ such that } 0 \leq f(n) \leq cg(n) \text{ for all } n \geq n_0 \}$

EXAMPLE: $2n^2 \in O(n^3)$

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.7



Set definition of O-notation

$O(g(n)) = \{ f(n) : \text{there exist constants } c > 0, n_0 > 0 \text{ such that } 0 \leq f(n) \leq cg(n) \text{ for all } n \geq n_0 \}$

EXAMPLE: $2n^2 \in O(n^3)$

(Logicians: $\lambda n. 2n^2 \in O(\lambda n. n^3)$, but it's convenient to be sloppy, as long as we understand what's *really* going on.)

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.8



Macro substitution

Convention: A set in a formula represents an anonymous function in the set.

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.9



Macro substitution

Convention: A set in a formula represents an anonymous function in the set.

EXAMPLE: $f(n) = n^3 + O(n^2)$

means

$f(n) = n^3 + h(n)$
for some $h(n) \in O(n^2)$.

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.10



Macro substitution

Convention: A set in a formula represents an anonymous function in the set.

EXAMPLE: $n^2 + O(n) = O(n^2)$ *asymmetric*
means

for any $f(n) \in O(n)$:

$$n^2 + f(n) = h(n)$$

for some $h(n) \in O(n^2)$.

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.11



Ω -notation (lower bounds)

Ω -notation is an *upper-bound* notation. It makes no sense to say $f(n)$ is at least $O(n^2)$.

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.12



~~Ω-notation (lower bounds)~~

O -notation is an *upper-bound* notation. It makes no sense to say $f(n)$ is at least $O(n^2)$.

$$\Omega(g(n)) = \{ f(n) : \text{there exist constants } c > 0, n_0 > 0 \text{ such that } 0 \leq cg(n) \leq f(n) \text{ for all } n \geq n_0 \}$$

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.13

+



Ω-notation (lower bounds)

O -notation is an *upper-bound* notation. It makes no sense to say $f(n)$ is at least $O(n^2)$.

$$\Omega(g(n)) = \{ f(n) : \text{there exist constants } c > 0, n_0 > 0 \text{ such that } 0 \leq cg(n) \leq f(n) \text{ for all } n \geq n_0 \}$$

EXAMPLE: $\sqrt{n} = \Omega(\lg n)$ ($c = 1, n_0 = 16$)

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.14



~~Θ-notation (tight bounds)~~

$$\Theta(g(n)) = O(g(n)) \cap \Omega(g(n))$$

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.15



Θ-notation (tight bounds)

$$\Theta(g(n)) = O(g(n)) \cap \Omega(g(n))$$

EXAMPLE: $\frac{1}{2}n^2 - 2n = \Theta(n^2)$

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.16



~~o-notation and ω-notation~~

O -notation and Ω -notation are like \leq and \geq .
 o -notation and ω -notation are like $<$ and $>$.

$$o(g(n)) = \{ f(n) : \text{for any constant } c > 0, \text{ there is a constant } n_0 > 0 \text{ such that } 0 \leq f(n) < cg(n) \text{ for all } n \geq n_0 \}$$

EXAMPLE: $2n^2 = o(n^3)$ ($n_0 = 2/c$)

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.17



o-notation and ω-notation

O -notation and Ω -notation are like \leq and \geq .
 o -notation and ω -notation are like $<$ and $>$.

$$\omega(g(n)) = \{ f(n) : \text{for any constant } c > 0, \text{ there is a constant } n_0 > 0 \text{ such that } 0 \leq cg(n) < f(n) \text{ for all } n \geq n_0 \}$$

EXAMPLE: $\sqrt{n} = \omega(\lg n)$ ($n_0 = 1+1/c$)

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.18



Solving recurrences

- The analysis of merge sort from *Lecture 1* required us to solve a recurrence.
- Recurrences are like solving integrals, differential equations, etc.
 - Learn a few tricks.
- Lecture 3:** Applications of recurrences to divide-and-conquer algorithms.

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.19

① Substitution method
 ② Recursion Tree Method
 ③ Master Method

② Recursion Tree Method
 ③ Master Method

Substitution method

The most general method:

- Guess** the form of the solution.
- Verify** by induction.
- Solve** for constants.

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.20



Substitution method

The most general method:

- Guess** the form of the solution.
- Verify** by induction.
- Solve** for constants.

EXAMPLE: $T(n) = 4T(n/2) + n$

- [Assume that $T(1) = \Theta(1)$.]
- Guess $\mathcal{O}(n^3)$. (Prove \mathcal{O} and Ω separately.)
- Assume that $T(k) \leq ck^3$ for $k < n$.
- Prove $T(n) \leq cn^3$ by induction.

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.21



Example of substitution

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &= 4T(n/2) + n \\ &\leq 4c(n/2)^3 + n \\ &= (c/2)n^3 + n \\ &= cn^3 - ((c/2)n^3 - n) \leftarrow \text{desired - residual} \\ &\leq cn^3 \leftarrow \text{desired} \end{aligned}$$

whenever $(c/2)n^3 - n \geq 0$, for example,
 if $c \geq 2$ and $n \geq 1$.

residual

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.22



Example (continued)

- We must also handle the initial conditions, that is, ground the induction with base cases.
- Base:** $T(n) = \Theta(1)$ for all $n < n_0$, where n_0 is a suitable constant.
- For $1 \leq n < n_0$, we have " $\Theta(1)$ " $\leq cn^3$, if we pick c big enough.

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.23



Example (continued)

- We must also handle the initial conditions, that is, ground the induction with base cases.
- Base:** $T(n) = \Theta(1)$ for all $n < n_0$, where n_0 is a suitable constant.
- For $1 \leq n < n_0$, we have " $\Theta(1)$ " $\leq cn^3$, if we pick c big enough.

This bound is not tight!

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.24



A tighter upper bound?

We shall prove that $T(n) = O(n^2)$.

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.25



A tighter upper bound?

We shall prove that $T(n) = O(n^2)$.

Assume that $T(k) \leq ck^2$ for $k < n$:

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &= 4T(n/2) + n \\ &\leq 4c(n/2)^2 + n \\ &= cn^2 + n \\ &= O(n^2) \end{aligned}$$

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.26



A tighter upper bound?

We shall prove that $T(n) = O(n^2)$.

Assume that $T(k) \leq ck^2$ for $k < n$:

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &= 4T(n/2) + n \\ &\leq 4c(n/2)^2 + n \\ &= cn^2 + n \\ &= O(\text{X}) \end{aligned}$$

Wrong! We must prove the I.H.

True but useless for induction

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.27



A tighter upper bound?

We shall prove that $T(n) = O(n^2)$.

Assume that $T(k) \leq ck^2$ for $k < n$:

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &= 4T(n/2) + n \\ &\leq 4c(n/2)^2 + n \\ &= cn^2 + n \\ &= O(\text{X}) \end{aligned}$$

Wrong! We must prove the I.H.

$= cn^2 - (-n)$ [desired - residual]

$\leq cn^2$ for no choice of $c > 0$. Lose!

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.28



A tighter upper bound!

IDEA: Strengthen the inductive hypothesis.

- **Subtract** a low-order term.

Inductive hypothesis: $T(k) \leq c_1k^2 - c_2k$ for $k < n$.

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.29



A tighter upper bound!

IDEA: Strengthen the inductive hypothesis.

- **Subtract** a low-order term.

Inductive hypothesis: $T(k) \leq c_1k^2 - c_2k$ for $k < n$.

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &= 4T(n/2) + n \\ &= 4(c_1(n/2)^2 - c_2(n/2)) + n \\ &= c_1n^2 - 2c_2n + n \\ &= c_1n^2 - c_2n - (c_2n - n) \\ &\leq c_1n^2 - c_2n \text{ if } c_2 \geq 1. \end{aligned}$$

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.30



A tighter upper bound!

IDEA: Strengthen the inductive hypothesis.

- **Subtract** a low-order term.

Inductive hypothesis: $T(k) \leq c_1 k^2 - c_2 k$ for $k < n$.

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &= 4T(n/2) + n \\ &= 4(c_1(n/2)^2 - c_2(n/2)) + n \\ &= c_1n^2 - 2c_2n + n \\ &= c_1n^2 - c_2n - (c_2n - n) \\ &\leq c_1n^2 - c_2n \text{ if } c_2 \geq 1. \end{aligned}$$

Pick c_1 big enough to handle the initial conditions.

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.31



⑦ Recursion-tree method

- A recursion tree models the costs (time) of a recursive execution of an algorithm.
- The recursion-tree method can be unreliable, just like any method that uses ellipses (...).
- The recursion-tree method promotes intuition, however.
- The recursion tree method is good for generating guesses for the substitution method.

September 12, 2005

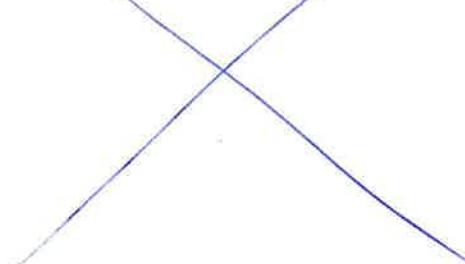
Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.32



Example of recursion tree

Solve $T(n) = T(n/4) + T(n/2) + n^2$:



September 12, 2005

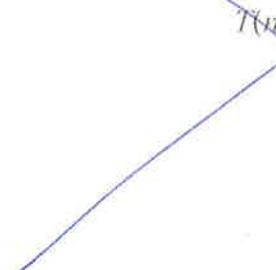
Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.33



Example of recursion tree

Solve $T(n) = T(n/4) + T(n/2) + n^2$:



September 12, 2005

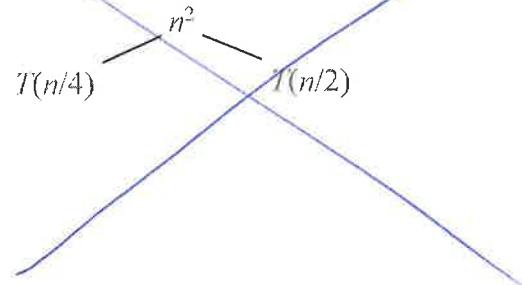
Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.34



Example of recursion tree

Solve $T(n) = T(n/4) + T(n/2) + n^2$:



September 12, 2005

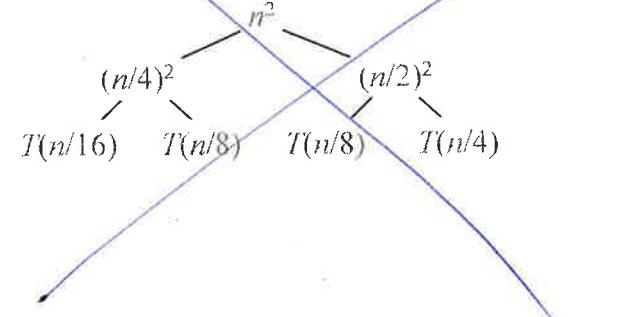
Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.35



Example of recursion tree

Solve $T(n) = T(n/4) + T(n/2) + n^2$:



September 12, 2005

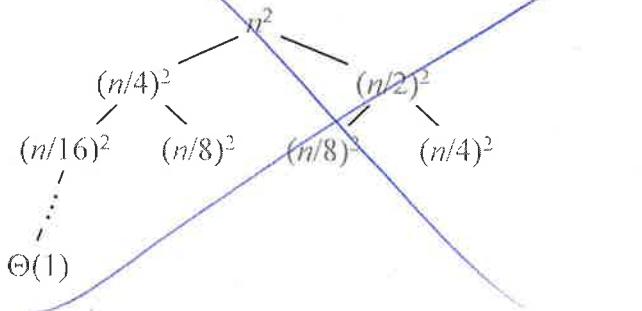
Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.36



Example of recursion tree

Solve $T(n) = T(n/4) + T(n/2) + n^2$:



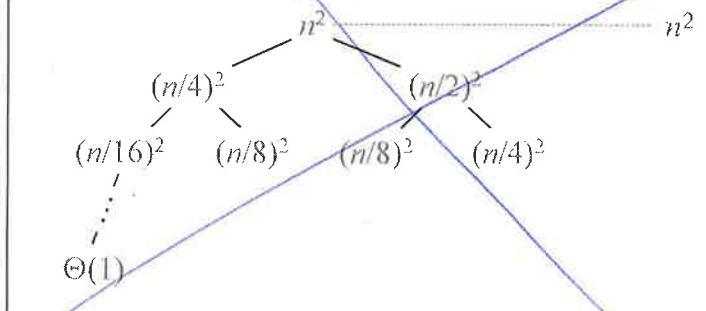
September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.37

Example of recursion tree

Solve $T(n) = T(n/4) + T(n/2) + n^2$:



September 12, 2005

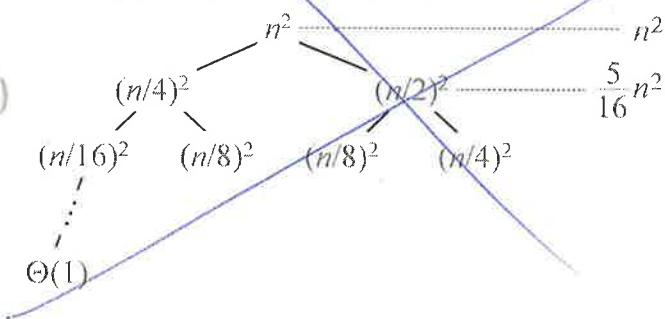
Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.38



Example of recursion tree

Solve $T(n) = T(n/4) + T(n/2) + n^2$:



September 12, 2005

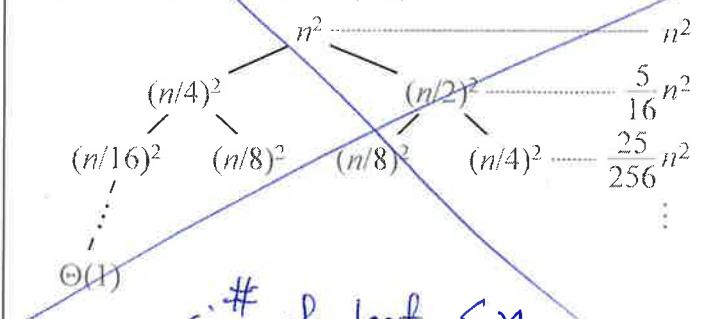
Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.39



Example of recursion tree

Solve $T(n) = T(n/4) + T(n/2) + n^2$:



September 12, 2005

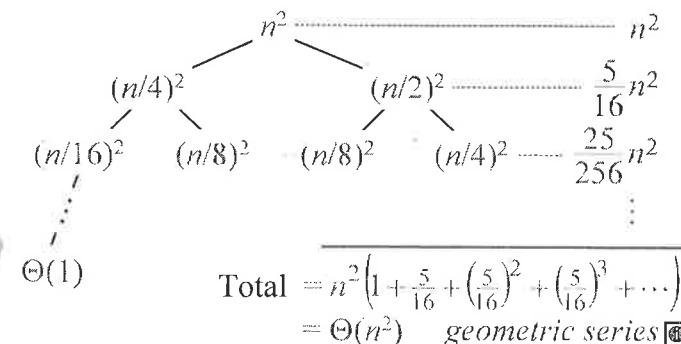
Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.40



Example of recursion tree

Solve $T(n) = T(n/4) + T(n/2) + n^2$:



September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.41



The master method

The master method applies to recurrences of the form

$$T(n) = aT(n/b) + f(n),$$

where $a \geq 1$, $b > 1$, and f is asymptotically positive.

$$f(n) > 0, n \geq n_0$$

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.42



Three common cases

Compare $f(n)$ with $n^{\log_b a}$:

- $f(n) = O(n^{\log_b a - \varepsilon})$ for some constant $\varepsilon > 0$.
• $f(n)$ grows polynomially slower than $n^{\log_b a}$ (by an n^ε factor).

Solution: $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a})$.

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.43



Three common cases

Compare $f(n)$ with $n^{\log_b a}$:

- $f(n) = O(n^{\log_b a - \varepsilon})$ for some constant $\varepsilon > 0$.
• $f(n)$ grows polynomially slower than $n^{\log_b a}$ (by an n^ε factor).

Solution: $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a})$.

- $f(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \lg^k n)$ for some constant $k \geq 0$.

• $f(n)$ and $n^{\log_b a}$ grow at similar rates.

Solution: $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \lg^{k+1} n)$.

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.44



Three common cases (cont.)

Compare $f(n)$ with $n^{\log_b a}$:

- $f(n) = \Omega(n^{\log_b a + \varepsilon})$ for some constant $\varepsilon > 0$.
• $f(n)$ grows polynomially faster than $n^{\log_b a}$ (by an n^ε factor),

and $f(n)$ satisfies the regularity condition that $a f(n/b) \leq c f(n)$ for some constant $c < 1$.

Solution: $T(n) = \Theta(f(n))$.

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.45



Examples

Ex. $T(n) = 4T(n/2) + n$

$$a = 4, b = 2 \Rightarrow n^{\log_b a} = n^2; f(n) = n.$$

CASE 1: $f(n) = O(n^{2-\varepsilon})$ for $\varepsilon = 1$.

$$\therefore T(n) = \Theta(n^2).$$

September 12, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.46



Examples

Ex. $T(n) = 4T(n/2) + n$

$$a = 4, b = 2 \Rightarrow n^{\log_b a} = n^2; f(n) = n.$$

CASE 1: $f(n) = O(n^{2-\varepsilon})$ for $\varepsilon = 1$.

$$\therefore T(n) = \Theta(n^2).$$

Ex. $T(n) = 4T(n/2) + n^2$

$$a = 4, b = 2 \Rightarrow n^{\log_b a} = n^2; f(n) = n^2.$$

CASE 2: $f(n) = \Theta(n^2 \lg^0 n)$, that is, $k = 0$.

$$\therefore T(n) = \Theta(n^2 \lg n).$$

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.47



Examples

Ex. $T(n) = 4T(n/2) + n^3$

$$a = 4, b = 2 \Rightarrow n^{\log_b a} = n^2; f(n) = n^3.$$

CASE 3: $f(n) = \Omega(n^{2+\varepsilon})$ for $\varepsilon = 1$

and $4(n/2)^3 \leq cn^3$ (reg. cond.) for $c = 1/2$.

$$\therefore T(n) = \Theta(n^3).$$

September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.48



Examples

Ex. $T(n) = 4T(n/2) + n^3$

$$a = 4, b = 2 \Rightarrow n^{\log_b a} = n^2; f(n) = n^3.$$

CASE 3: $f(n) = \Omega(n^{2+\varepsilon})$ for $\varepsilon = 1$

and $4(n/2)^3 \leq cn^3$ (reg. cond.) for $c = 1/2$.

$$\therefore T(n) = \Theta(n^3).$$

Ex. $T(n) = 4T(n/2) + n^2/\lg n$

$$a = 4, b = 2 \Rightarrow n^{\log_b a} = n^2; f(n) = n^2/\lg n.$$

Master method does not apply. In particular, for every constant $\varepsilon > 0$, we have $n^\varepsilon = \omega(\lg n)$.

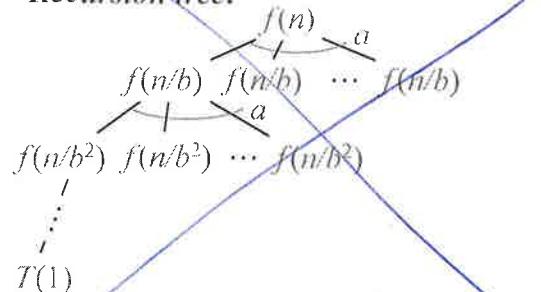
September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.49

Idea of master theorem

Recursion tree:



September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

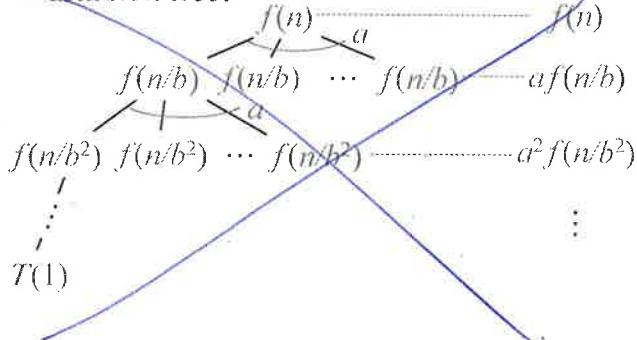
L2.50

hard to complete $\Theta(n^{\alpha \log n})$
and $\Theta(n^\alpha)$.



Idea of master theorem

Recursion tree:



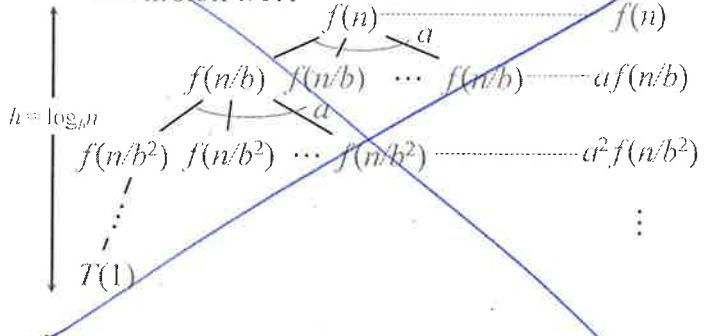
September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.51

Idea of master theorem

Recursion tree:



September 12, 2005

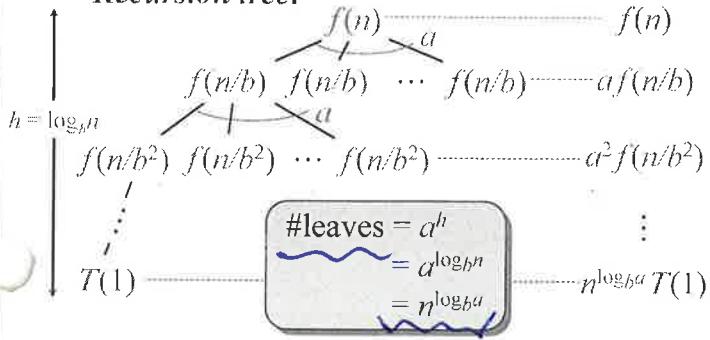
Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.52



Idea of master theorem

Recursion tree:



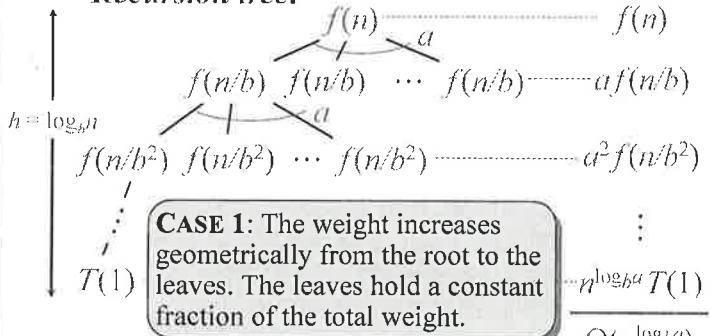
September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.53

Idea of master theorem

Recursion tree:



September 12, 2005

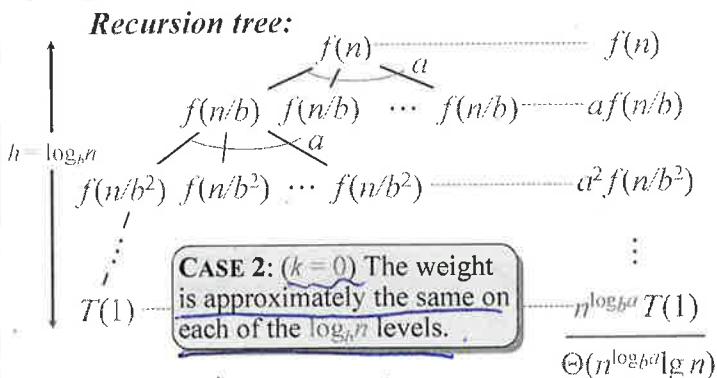
Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.54

dominated by $\Theta(n^{\log_b a})$,
biggest one in tree



Idea of master theorem



September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

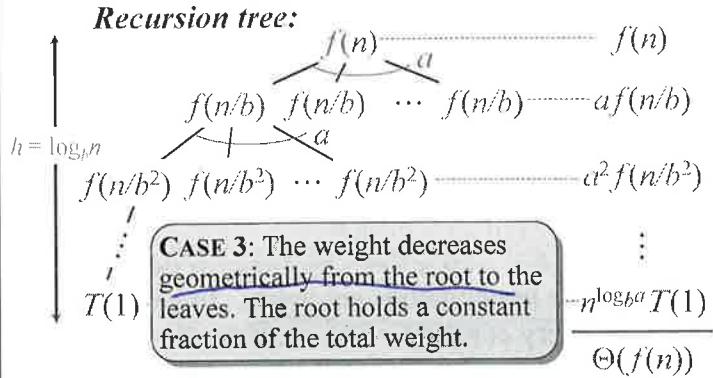
L2.55

dominated by $f(n)$ ($\log n$)

n of the tree



Idea of master theorem



September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.56

dominated by $f(n)$

*bigest one
in the tree*



Appendix: geometric series

$$1 + x + x^2 + \dots + x^n = \frac{1 - x^{n+1}}{1 - x} \quad \text{for } x \neq 1$$

$$1 + x + x^2 + \dots = \frac{1}{1 - x} \quad \text{for } |x| < 1$$

Return to last slide viewed.

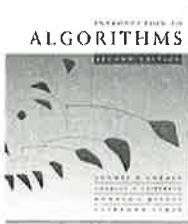
September 12, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.57

Introduction to Algorithms

6.046J/18.401J



LECTURE 3

Divide and Conquer

- Binary search
- Powering a number
- Fibonacci numbers
- Matrix multiplication
- Strassen's algorithm
- VLSI tree layout

Prof. Erik D. Demaine

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.1

The divide-and-conquer design paradigm

1. Divide the problem (instance) into subproblems.
2. Conquer the subproblems by solving them recursively.
3. Combine subproblem solutions.

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.2

Merge sort

1. **Divide:** Trivial.
2. **Conquer:** Recursively sort 2 subarrays.
3. **Combine:** Linear-time merge.

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.3

Merge sort

1. **Divide:** Trivial.
2. **Conquer:** Recursively sort 2 subarrays.
3. **Combine:** Linear-time merge.

$$T(n) = 2 T(n/2) + \Theta(n)$$

subproblems subproblem size work dividing and combining
 $\Rightarrow \Theta(n \lg n)$

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.4

Master theorem (reprise)

$$T(n) = a T(n/b) + f(n)$$

CASE 1: $f(n) = O(n^{\log_b a - \epsilon})$, constant $\epsilon > 0$
 $\Rightarrow T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a})$.

CASE 2: $f(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \lg^k n)$, constant $k \geq 0$
 $\Rightarrow T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \lg^{k+1} n)$.

CASE 3: $f(n) = \Omega(n^{\log_b a + \epsilon})$, constant $\epsilon > 0$,
and regularity condition
 $\Rightarrow T(n) = \Theta(f(n))$.

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.5

Master theorem (reprise)

$$T(n) = a T(n/b) + f(n)$$

CASE 1: $f(n) = O(n^{\log_b a - \epsilon})$, constant $\epsilon > 0$
 $\Rightarrow T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a})$.

CASE 2: $f(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \lg^k n)$, constant $k \geq 0$
 $\Rightarrow T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \lg^{k+1} n)$.

CASE 3: $f(n) = \Omega(n^{\log_b a + \epsilon})$, constant $\epsilon > 0$,
and regularity condition
 $\Rightarrow T(n) = \Theta(f(n))$.

Merge sort: $a = 2, b = 2 \Rightarrow n^{\log_b a} = n^{\log_2 2} = n$
 \Rightarrow CASE 2 ($k = 0$) $\Rightarrow T(n) = \Theta(n \lg n)$.

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.6



Binary search

Find an element in a sorted array:

1. *Divide*: Check middle element.
2. *Conquer*: Recursively search 1 subarray.
3. *Combine*: Trivial.

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.7

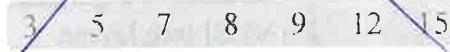


Binary search

Find an element in a sorted array:

1. *Divide*: Check middle element.
2. *Conquer*: Recursively search 1 subarray.
3. *Combine*: Trivial.

Example: Find 9



September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.8



Binary search

Find an element in a sorted array:

1. *Divide*: Check middle element.
2. *Conquer*: Recursively search 1 subarray.
3. *Combine*: Trivial.

Example: Find 9



September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.9



Binary search

Find an element in a sorted array:

1. *Divide*: Check middle element.
2. *Conquer*: Recursively search 1 subarray.
3. *Combine*: Trivial.

Example: Find 9



September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.10



Binary search

Find an element in a sorted array:

1. *Divide*: Check middle element.
2. *Conquer*: Recursively search 1 subarray.
3. *Combine*: Trivial.

Example: Find 9



September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.11

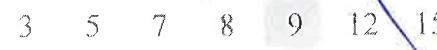


Binary search

Find an element in a sorted array:

1. *Divide*: Check middle element.
2. *Conquer*: Recursively search 1 subarray.
3. *Combine*: Trivial.

Example: Find 9



September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.12

Binary search

Find an element in a sorted array:

1. **Divide:** Check middle element.
2. **Conquer:** Recursively search 1 subarray.
3. **Combine:** Trivial.

Example: Find 9

3 5 7 8 9 12 15

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.13

Recurrence for binary search

$$T(n) = 1 T(n/2) + \Theta(1)$$

subproblems

subproblem size
work dividing
and combining

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.14

Recurrence for binary search

$$T(n) = 1 T(n/2) + \Theta(1)$$

subproblems

subproblem size
work dividing
and combining

$$n^{\log_b a} = n^{\log_2 1} = n^0 = 1 \Rightarrow \text{CASE 2 } (k=0) \\ \Rightarrow T(n) = \Theta(\lg n).$$

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.15

Powering a number

Problem: Compute a^n , where $n \in \mathbb{N}$.

Naive algorithm: $\Theta(n)$.

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.16

Powering a number

Problem: Compute a^n , where $n \in \mathbb{N}$.

Naive algorithm: $\Theta(n)$.

Divide-and-conquer algorithm:

$$a^n = \begin{cases} a^{n/2} \cdot a^{n/2} & \text{if } n \text{ is even;} \\ a^{(n-1)/2} \cdot a^{(n-1)/2} \cdot a & \text{if } n \text{ is odd.} \end{cases}$$

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.17

Powering a number

Problem: Compute a^n , where $n \in \mathbb{N}$.

Naive algorithm: $\Theta(n)$.

Divide-and-conquer algorithm:

$$a^n = \begin{cases} a^{n/2} \cdot a^{n/2} & \text{if } n \text{ is even;} \\ a^{(n-1)/2} \cdot a^{(n-1)/2} \cdot a & \text{if } n \text{ is odd.} \end{cases}$$

$$T(n) = T(n/2) + \Theta(1) \Rightarrow T(n) = \Theta(\lg n).$$

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.18



Fibonacci numbers

Recursive definition:

$$F_n = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } n = 0; \\ 1 & \text{if } n = 1; \\ F_{n-1} + F_{n-2} & \text{if } n \geq 2. \end{cases}$$

0 1 1 2 3 5 8 13 21 34 ...

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.19



Fibonacci numbers

Recursive definition:

$$F_n = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } n = 0; \\ 1 & \text{if } n = 1; \\ F_{n-1} + F_{n-2} & \text{if } n \geq 2. \end{cases}$$

0 1 1 2 3 5 8 13 21 34 ...

Naive recursive algorithm: $\Omega(\phi^n)$ (exponential time), where $\phi = (1 + \sqrt{5})/2$ is the *golden ratio*.

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.20



Computing Fibonacci numbers

Bottom-up:

- Compute $F_0, F_1, F_2, \dots, F_n$ in order, forming each number by summing the two previous.
- Running time: $\Theta(n)$.

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.21



Computing Fibonacci numbers

Bottom-up:

- Compute $F_0, F_1, F_2, \dots, F_n$ in order, forming each number by summing the two previous.
- Running time: $\Theta(n)$.

Naive recursive squaring:

$$F_n = \phi^n / \sqrt{5} \text{ rounded to the nearest integer.}$$

- Recursive squaring: $\Theta(\lg n)$ time.
- This method is unreliable, since floating-point arithmetic is prone to round-off errors.

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.22



Recursive squaring

Theorem: $\begin{bmatrix} F_{n+1} & F_n \\ F_n & F_{n-1} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}^n$.

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.23



Recursive squaring

Theorem: $\begin{bmatrix} F_{n+1} & F_n \\ F_n & F_{n-1} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}^n$.

Algorithm: Recursive squaring.
Time = $\Theta(\lg n)$.

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.24

Recursive squaring

Theorem: $\begin{bmatrix} F_{n+1} & F_n \\ F_n & F_{n-1} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}^n$.

Algorithm: Recursive squaring.

Time = $\Theta(\lg n)$.

Proof of theorem. (Induction on n .)

Base ($n = 1$): $\begin{bmatrix} F_2 & F_1 \\ F_1 & F_0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}^1$.

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.25

Recursive squaring

Inductive step ($n \geq 2$):

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{bmatrix} F_{n+1} & F_n \\ F_n & F_{n-1} \end{bmatrix} &= \begin{bmatrix} F_n & F_{n-1} \\ F_{n-1} & F_{n-2} \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}^{n-1} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}^n \quad \blacksquare \end{aligned}$$

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.26

Matrix multiplication

Input: $A = [a_{ij}]$, $B = [b_{ij}]$. } $i, j = 1, 2, \dots, n$.
Output: $C = [c_{ij}] = A \cdot B$. }

$$\begin{bmatrix} c_{11} & c_{12} & \cdots & c_{1n} \\ c_{21} & c_{22} & \cdots & c_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ c_{n1} & c_{n2} & \cdots & c_{nn} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \cdots & a_{nn} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} b_{11} & b_{12} & \cdots & b_{1n} \\ b_{21} & b_{22} & \cdots & b_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ b_{n1} & b_{n2} & \cdots & b_{nn} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$c_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^n a_{ik} \cdot b_{kj}$$

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.27

Standard algorithm

~~```
for i ← 1 to n
 do for j ← 1 to n
 do cij ← 0
 for k ← 1 to n
 do cij ← cij + aik · bkj
```~~

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.28

## Standard algorithm

```
for i ← 1 to n
 do for j ← 1 to n
 do cij ← 0
 for k ← 1 to n
 do cij ← cij + aik · bkj
```

Running time =  $\Theta(n^3)$

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.29

## Divide-and-conquer algorithm

### IDEA:

$n \times n$  matrix =  $2 \times 2$  matrix of  $(n/2) \times (n/2)$  submatrices:

$$\begin{bmatrix} r & s \\ t & u \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} e & f \\ g & h \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} C = A \cdot B \\ r = ae + bg \\ s = af + bh \\ t = ce + dg \\ u = cf + dh \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} 8 \text{ mults of } (n/2) \times (n/2) \text{ submatrices} \\ 4 \text{ adds of } (n/2) \times (n/2) \text{ submatrices} \end{array}$$

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.30



## Divide-and-conquer algorithm

**IDEA:**

$n \times n$  matrix =  $2 \times 2$  matrix of  $(n/2) \times (n/2)$  submatrices:

$$\begin{bmatrix} r & s \\ t & u \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} e & f \\ g & h \end{bmatrix}$$

$$C = A \cdot B$$

$$r = ae + bg \quad \text{recursive}$$

$$s = af + bh \quad 8 \text{ mults of } (n/2) \times (n/2) \text{ submatrices}$$

$$t = ce + dh \quad 4 \text{ adds of } (n/2) \times (n/2) \text{ submatrices}$$

$$u = cf + dg$$

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.31



## Analysis of D&C algorithm

$$T(n) = 8 T(n/2) + \Theta(n^2)$$

# submatrices

work adding  
submatrices

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.32



## Analysis of D&C algorithm

$$T(n) = 8 T(n/2) + \Theta(n^2)$$

# submatrices

work adding  
submatrices

$$n^{\log_b a} = n^{\log_2 8} = n^3 \Rightarrow \text{CASE 1} \Rightarrow T(n) = \Theta(n^3).$$

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.33



## Analysis of D&C algorithm

$$T(n) = 8 T(n/2) + \Theta(n^2)$$

# submatrices

work adding  
submatrices

$$n^{\log_b a} = n^{\log_2 8} = n^3 \Rightarrow \text{CASE 1} \Rightarrow T(n) = \Theta(n^3).$$

No better than the ordinary algorithm.

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.34



## Strassen's idea

- Multiply  $2 \times 2$  matrices with only 7 recursive mults.

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.35



## Strassen's idea

- Multiply  $2 \times 2$  matrices with only 7 recursive mults.

$$P_1 = a \cdot (f - h)$$

$$P_2 = (a + b) \cdot h$$

$$P_3 = (c + d) \cdot e$$

$$P_4 = d \cdot (g - e)$$

$$P_5 = (a + d) \cdot (e + h)$$

$$P_6 = (b - d) \cdot (g + h)$$

$$P_7 = (a - c) \cdot (e + f)$$

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.36



## Strassen's idea

- Multiply  $2 \times 2$  matrices with only 7 recursive mults.

$$\begin{aligned} P_1 &= a \cdot (f - h) \\ P_2 &= (a + b) \cdot h \\ P_3 &= (c + d) \cdot e \\ P_4 &= d \cdot (g - e) \\ P_5 &= (a + d) \cdot (e + h) \\ P_6 &= (b - d) \cdot (g + h) \\ P_7 &= (a - c) \cdot (e + f) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} r &= P_5 + P_4 - P_2 + P_6 \\ s &= P_1 + P_2 \\ t &= P_3 + P_4 \\ u &= P_5 + P_1 - P_3 - P_7 \end{aligned}$$

September 14, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L2.37

## Strassen's idea

- Multiply  $2 \times 2$  matrices with only 7 recursive mults.

$$\begin{aligned} P_1 &= a \cdot (f - h) & r &= P_5 + P_4 - P_2 + P_6 \\ P_2 &= (a + b) \cdot h & s &= P_1 + P_2 \\ P_3 &= (c + d) \cdot e & t &= P_3 + P_4 \\ P_4 &= d \cdot (g - e) & u &= P_5 + P_1 - P_3 - P_7 \\ P_5 &= (a + d) \cdot (e + h) \\ P_6 &= (b - d) \cdot (g + h) \\ P_7 &= (a - c) \cdot (e + f) \end{aligned}$$

7 mults, 18 adds/subs.  
**Note:** No reliance on commutativity of mult!

September 14, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L2.38



## Strassen's idea

- Multiply  $2 \times 2$  matrices with only 7 recursive mults.

$$\begin{aligned} P_1 &= a \cdot (f - h) & r &= P_5 + P_4 - P_2 + P_6 \\ P_2 &= (a + b) \cdot h & &= (a + d)(e + h) \\ P_3 &= (c + d) \cdot e & &+ d(g - e) - (a + b)h \\ P_4 &= d \cdot (g - e) & &+ (b - d)(g + h) \\ P_5 &= (a + d) \cdot (e + h) & &= ae + ah + de + dh \\ P_6 &= (b - d) \cdot (g + h) & &+ dg - de - ah - bh \\ P_7 &= (a - c) \cdot (e + f) & &+ bg + bh - dg - dh \\ & & &= ae + bg \end{aligned}$$

September 14, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L2.39



## Strassen's algorithm

- Divide:** Partition  $A$  and  $B$  into  $(n/2) \times (n/2)$  submatrices. Form terms to be multiplied using  $+$  and  $-$ .
- Conquer:** Perform 7 multiplications of  $(n/2) \times (n/2)$  submatrices recursively.
- Combine:** Form  $C$  using  $+$  and  $-$  on  $(n/2) \times (n/2)$  submatrices.

September 14, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L2.40



## Strassen's algorithm

- Divide:** Partition  $A$  and  $B$  into  $(n/2) \times (n/2)$  submatrices. Form terms to be multiplied using  $+$  and  $-$ .
- Conquer:** Perform 7 multiplications of  $(n/2) \times (n/2)$  submatrices recursively.
- Combine:** Form  $C$  using  $+$  and  $-$  on  $(n/2) \times (n/2)$  submatrices.

$$T(n) = 7 T(n/2) + \Theta(n^2)$$

September 14, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L2.41



## Analysis of Strassen

$$T(n) = 7 T(n/2) + \Theta(n^2)$$

September 14, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L2.42



## Analysis of Strassen

$$T(n) = 7 T(n/2) + \Theta(n^2)$$

$$n^{\log_b a} = n^{\log_2 7} \approx n^{2.81} \Rightarrow \text{CASE 1} \Rightarrow T(n) = \Theta(n^{\lg 7}).$$

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.43



## Analysis of Strassen

$$T(n) = 7 T(n/2) + \Theta(n^2)$$

$$n^{\log_b a} = n^{\log_2 7} \approx n^{2.81} \Rightarrow \text{CASE 1} \Rightarrow T(n) = \Theta(n^{\lg 7}).$$

The number 2.81 may not seem much smaller than 3, but because the difference is in the exponent, the impact on running time is significant. In fact, Strassen's algorithm beats the ordinary algorithm on today's machines for  $n \geq 32$  or so.

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.44



## Analysis of Strassen

$$T(n) = 7 T(n/2) + \Theta(n^2)$$

$$n^{\log_b a} = n^{\log_2 7} \approx n^{2.81} \Rightarrow \text{CASE 1} \Rightarrow T(n) = \Theta(n^{\lg 7}).$$

The number 2.81 may not seem much smaller than 3, but because the difference is in the exponent, the impact on running time is significant. In fact, Strassen's algorithm beats the ordinary algorithm on today's machines for  $n \geq 32$  or so.

**Best to date** (of theoretical interest only):  $\Theta(n^{2.376\dots})$ .

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.45



## VLSI layout

**Problem:** Embed a complete binary tree with  $n$  leaves in a grid using minimal area.

September 14, 2005

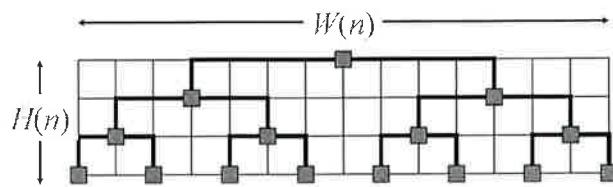
Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.46



## VLSI layout

**Problem:** Embed a complete binary tree with  $n$  leaves in a grid using minimal area.



September 14, 2005

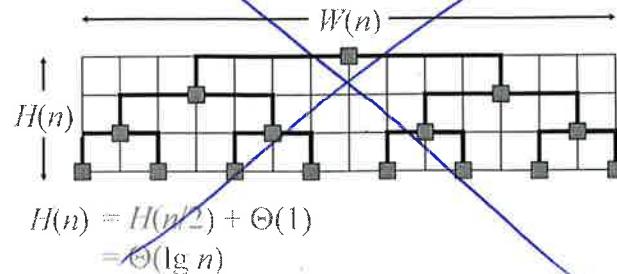
Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.47



## VLSI layout

**Problem:** Embed a complete binary tree with  $n$  leaves in a grid using minimal area.



September 14, 2005

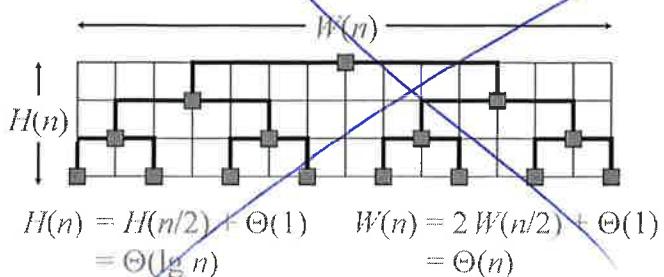
Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.48



## VLSI layout

**Problem:** Embed a complete binary tree with  $n$  leaves in a grid using minimal area.



September 14, 2005

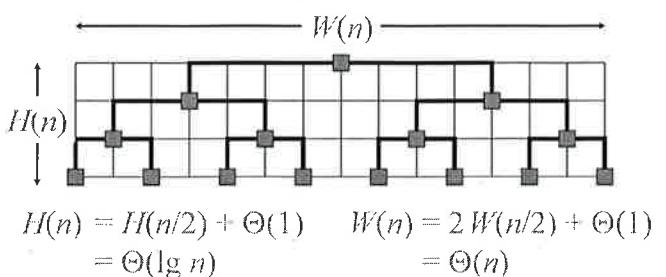
Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.49



## VLSI layout

**Problem:** Embed a complete binary tree with  $n$  leaves in a grid using minimal area.



September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.50

By Master Method.

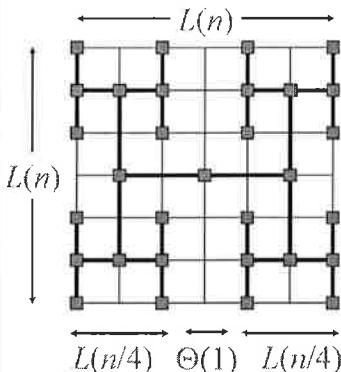


## H-tree embedding

$$\text{when } \frac{\log a}{\log b} = 2 \text{ we can get } n^{\frac{1}{2}} - n^{\frac{1}{2}} = n \text{ try } a=2, b=4.$$



## H-tree embedding



September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.51

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.52

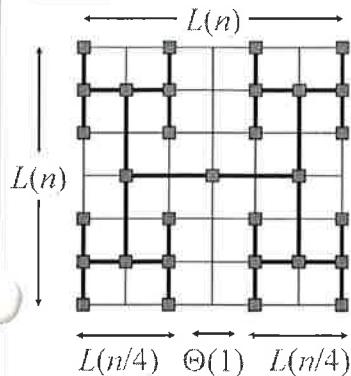
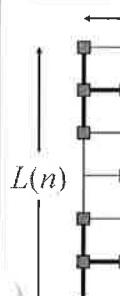


## H-tree embedding



## Conclusion

- Divide and conquer is just one of several powerful techniques for algorithm design.
- Divide-and-conquer algorithms can be analyzed using recurrences and the master method (so practice this math).
- The divide-and-conquer strategy often leads to efficient algorithms.



$$L(n) = 2L(n/4) + \Theta(1) = \Theta(\sqrt{n})$$

Area =  $\Theta(n)$

September 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.53

September 14, 2005

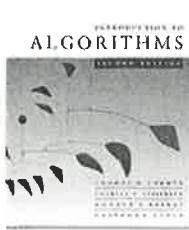
Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L2.54



# Introduction to Algorithms

6.046J/18.401J



## LECTURE 4

### Quicksort

- Divide and conquer
- Partitioning
- Worst-case analysis
- Intuition
- Randomized quicksort
- Analysis

Prof. Charles E. Leiserson

September 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L4.1

## Quicksort

- Proposed by C.A.R. Hoare in 1962.
- Divide-and-conquer algorithm.
- Sorts “in place” (like insertion sort, but not like merge sort).
- Very practical (with tuning).

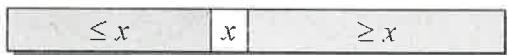
September 21, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L4.2

## Divide and conquer

Quicksort an  $n$ -element array:

1. **Divide:** Partition the array into two subarrays around a *pivot*  $x$  such that elements in lower subarray  $\leq x$   $\leq$  elements in upper subarray.



2. **Conquer:** Recursively sort the two subarrays.
3. **Combine:** Trivial.

**Key:** Linear-time partitioning subroutine.

September 21, 2005

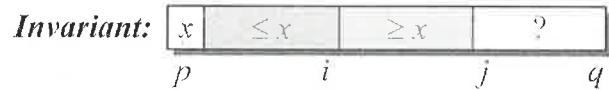
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L4.3

## Partitioning subroutine

```
PARTITION(A, p, q) $\triangleright A[p \dots q]$
 $x \leftarrow A[p]$ \triangleright pivot = $A[p]$
 $i \leftarrow p$
for $j \leftarrow p + 1$ to q
do if $A[j] \leq x$
 then $i \leftarrow i + 1$
 exchange $A[i] \leftrightarrow A[j]$
exchange $A[p] \leftrightarrow A[i]$
return i
```

Running time  
 $= O(n)$  for  $n$  elements.

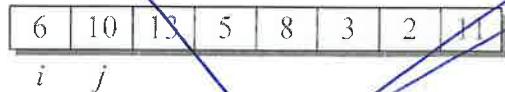


September 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L4.4

## Example of partitioning



September 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L4.5

## Example of partitioning



September 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L4.6



## Example of partitioning

|   |    |    |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|----|----|---|---|---|---|----|
| 6 | 10 | 13 | 5 | 8 | 3 | 2 | 11 |
|---|----|----|---|---|---|---|----|

i

j

September 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L4.7



## Example of partitioning

|   |    |    |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|----|----|---|---|---|---|----|
| 6 | 10 | 13 | 5 | 8 | 3 | 2 | 11 |
|---|----|----|---|---|---|---|----|

i

j

September 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L4.8



## Example of partitioning

|   |    |    |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|----|----|---|---|---|---|----|
| 6 | 10 | 13 | 5 | 8 | 3 | 2 | 11 |
|---|----|----|---|---|---|---|----|

i

j

September 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L4.9



## Example of partitioning

|   |    |    |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|----|----|---|---|---|---|----|
| 6 | 10 | 13 | 5 | 8 | 3 | 2 | 11 |
|---|----|----|---|---|---|---|----|

i

j

September 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L4.10



## Example of partitioning

|   |    |    |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|----|----|---|---|---|---|----|
| 6 | 10 | 13 | 5 | 8 | 3 | 2 | 11 |
|---|----|----|---|---|---|---|----|

i

j

September 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L4.11



## Example of partitioning

|   |    |    |   |   |   |   |    |
|---|----|----|---|---|---|---|----|
| 6 | 10 | 13 | 5 | 8 | 3 | 2 | 11 |
|---|----|----|---|---|---|---|----|

i

j

September 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L4.12



## Example of partitioning

|   |    |    |    |   |    |    |    |
|---|----|----|----|---|----|----|----|
| 6 | 10 | 13 | 5  | 8 | 3  | 2  | 11 |
| 6 | 5  | 13 | 10 | 8 | 3  | 2  | 11 |
| 6 | 5  | 3  | 10 | 8 | 13 | 2  | 11 |
| 6 | 5  | 3  | 2  | 8 | 13 | 10 | 11 |

$\leftarrow i \qquad \qquad \qquad \rightarrow j$

September 21, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L4.13



## Example of partitioning

|   |    |    |    |   |    |    |    |
|---|----|----|----|---|----|----|----|
| 6 | 10 | 13 | 5  | 8 | 3  | 2  | 11 |
| 6 | 5  | 13 | 10 | 8 | 3  | 2  | 11 |
| 6 | 5  | 3  | 10 | 8 | 13 | 2  | 11 |
| 6 | 5  | 3  | 2  | 8 | 13 | 10 | 11 |

$i \qquad \qquad \qquad \rightarrow j$

September 21, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L4.14



## Example of partitioning

|   |    |    |    |   |    |    |    |
|---|----|----|----|---|----|----|----|
| 6 | 10 | 13 | 5  | 8 | 3  | 2  | 11 |
| 6 | 5  | 13 | 10 | 8 | 3  | 2  | 11 |
| 6 | 5  | 3  | 10 | 8 | 13 | 2  | 11 |
| 6 | 5  | 3  | 2  | 8 | 13 | 10 | 11 |

$i \qquad \qquad \qquad \rightarrow j$

September 21, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L4.15



## Example of partitioning

|   |    |    |    |   |    |    |    |
|---|----|----|----|---|----|----|----|
| 6 | 10 | 13 | 5  | 8 | 3  | 2  | 11 |
| 6 | 5  | 13 | 10 | 8 | 3  | 2  | 11 |
| 6 | 5  | 3  | 10 | 8 | 13 | 2  | 11 |
| 6 | 5  | 3  | 2  | 8 | 13 | 10 | 11 |
| 2 | 5  | 3  | 6  | 8 | 13 | 10 | 11 |

$i$

September 21, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L4.16



## Pseudocode for quicksort

```

QUICKSORT(A, p, r)
 if $p < r$
 then $q \leftarrow \text{PARTITION}(A, p, r)$
 QUICKSORT($A, p, q-1$)
 QUICKSORT($A, q+1, r$)

```

**Initial call:**  $\text{QUICKSORT}(A, 1, n)$

September 21, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L4.17



## Analysis of quicksort

- Assume all input elements are distinct.
- In practice, there are better partitioning algorithms for when duplicate input elements may exist.
- Let  $T(n) =$  worst-case running time on an array of  $n$  elements.

September 21, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L4.18



## Worst-case of quicksort

- Input sorted or reverse sorted.
- Partition around min or max element.
- One side of partition always has no elements.

$$\begin{aligned}
 T(n) &= T(0) + T(n-1) + \Theta(n) \\
 &= \Theta(1) + T(n-1) + \Theta(n) \\
 &= T(n-1) + \Theta(n) \\
 &= \Theta(n^2) \quad (\text{arithmetic series})
 \end{aligned}$$

September 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L4.19



## Worst-case recursion tree

$$T(n) = T(0) + T(n-1) + cn$$

September 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L4.20



## Worst-case recursion tree

$$T(n) = T(0) + T(n-1) + cn$$

September 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L4.21



## Worst-case recursion tree

$$T(n) = T(0) + T(n-1) + cn$$

$$cn$$

$$T(0) \quad T(n-1)$$

September 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L4.22



## Worst-case recursion tree

$$\begin{aligned}
 T(n) &= T(0) + T(n-1) + cn \\
 cn \\
 T(0) &\quad c(n-1) \\
 T(0) &\quad T(n-2)
 \end{aligned}$$

September 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L4.23



## Worst-case recursion tree

$$\begin{aligned}
 T(n) &= T(0) + T(n-1) + cn \\
 cn \\
 T(0) &\quad c(n-1) \\
 T(0) &\quad T(n-2) \\
 T(0) &\quad T(n-3) \\
 &\quad \vdots \\
 &\quad \Theta(1)
 \end{aligned}$$

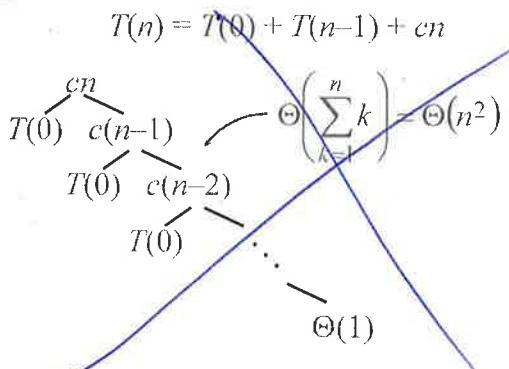
September 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L4.24



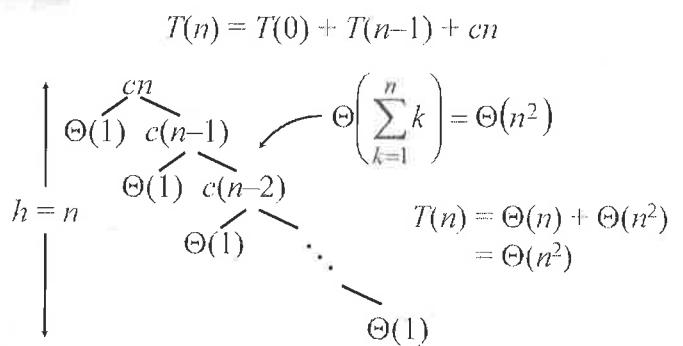
## Worst-case recursion tree



September 21, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L4.25



## Worst-case recursion tree



September 21, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L4.26



## Best-case analysis *(For intuition only!)*

If we're lucky, PARTITION splits the array evenly:

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &= 2T(n/2) + \Theta(n) \\ &= \Theta(n \lg n) \quad (\text{same as merge sort}) \end{aligned}$$

What if the split is always  $\frac{1}{10} : \frac{9}{10}$ ?

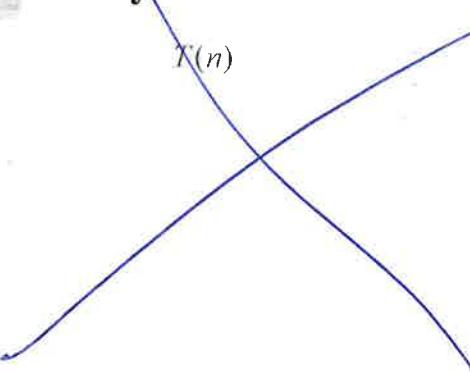
$$T(n) = T\left(\frac{1}{10}n\right) + T\left(\frac{9}{10}n\right) + \Theta(n)$$

What is the solution to this recurrence?

September 21, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L4.27



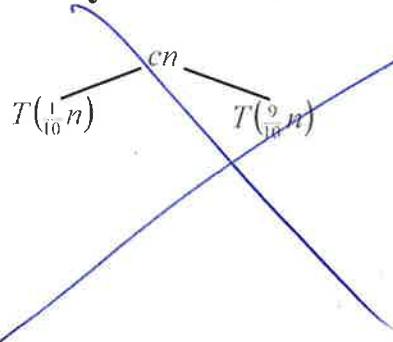
## Analysis of “almost-best” case



September 21, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L4.28



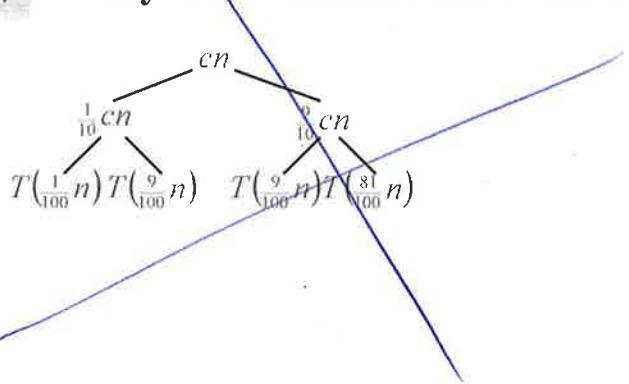
## Analysis of “almost-best” case



September 21, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L4.29



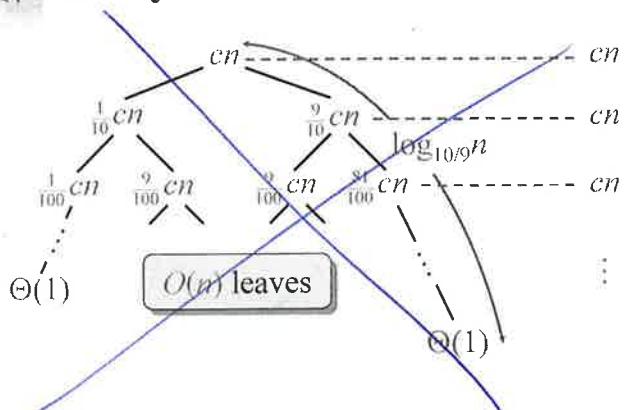
## Analysis of “almost-best” case



September 21, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L4.30



## Analysis of “almost-best” case



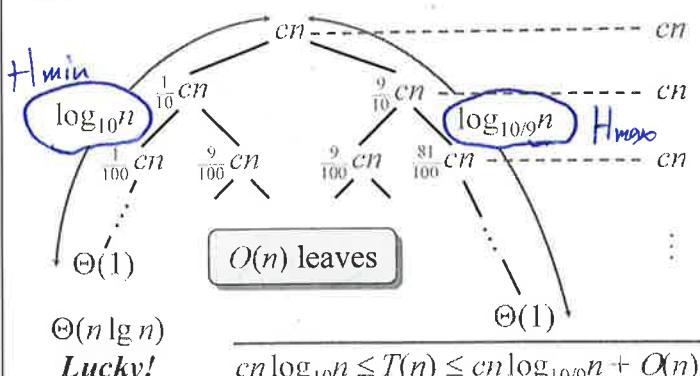
September 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L4.31



## Analysis of “almost-best” case



September 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L4.32



## More intuition

Suppose we alternate lucky, unlucky, lucky, unlucky, lucky, ....

$$L(n) = 2U(n/2) + \Theta(n) \quad \text{lucky}$$

$$U(n) = L(n-1) + \Theta(n) \quad \text{unlucky}$$

Solving:

$$\begin{aligned} L(n) &= 2(L(n/2 - 1) + \Theta(n/2)) + \Theta(n) \\ &= 2L(n/2 - 1) + \Theta(n) \\ &= \Theta(n \lg n) \quad \text{lucky!} \end{aligned}$$

How can we make sure we are usually lucky?

September 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L4.33



## Randomized quicksort

IDEA: Partition around a *random* element. *switch it with first element.*

- Running time is independent of the input order.
- No assumptions need to be made about the input distribution.
- No specific input elicits the worst-case behavior.
- The worst case is determined only by the output of a random-number generator.

September 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L4.34



## Randomized quicksort analysis

Let  $T(n)$  = the random variable for the running time of randomized quicksort on an input of size  $n$ , assuming random numbers are independent.

For  $k = 0, 1, \dots, n-1$ , define the *indicator random variable*

$$X_k = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if PARTITION generates a } k : n-k-1 \text{ split,} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

$E[X_k] = \Pr\{X_k = 1\} = 1/n$ , since all splits are equally likely, assuming elements are distinct.

September 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L4.35



## Analysis (continued)

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &= \begin{cases} T(0) + T(n-1) + \Theta(n) & \text{if } 0:n-1 \text{ split,} \\ T(1) + T(n-2) + \Theta(n) & \text{if } 1:n-2 \text{ split,} \\ \vdots \\ T(n-1) + T(0) + \Theta(n) & \text{if } n-1:0 \text{ split,} \end{cases} \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} X_k (T(k) + T(n-k-1) + \Theta(n)) \end{aligned}$$

September 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L4.36

## Calculating expectation

$$E[T(n)] = E\left[\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} X_k (T(k) + T(n-k-1) + \Theta(n))\right]$$

Take expectations of both sides.

## Calculating expectation

$$\begin{aligned} E[T(n)] &= E\left[\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} X_k (T(k) + T(n-k-1) + \Theta(n))\right] \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} E[X_k (T(k) + T(n-k-1) + \Theta(n))] \end{aligned}$$

Linearity of expectation.

## Calculating expectation

$$\begin{aligned} E[T(n)] &= E\left[\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} X_k (T(k) + T(n-k-1) + \Theta(n))\right] \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} E[X_k (T(k) + T(n-k-1) + \Theta(n))] \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} E[X_k] \cdot E[T(k) + T(n-k-1) + \Theta(n)] \end{aligned}$$

Independence of  $X_k$  from other random choices.

## Calculating expectation

$$\begin{aligned} E[T(n)] &= E\left[\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} X_k (T(k) + T(n-k-1) + \Theta(n))\right] \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} E[X_k (T(k) + T(n-k-1) + \Theta(n))] \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} E[X_k] \cdot E[T(k) + T(n-k-1) + \Theta(n)] \\ &= \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} E[T(k)] + \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} E[T(n-k-1)] + \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \Theta(n) \end{aligned}$$

Linearity of expectation;  $E[X_k] = 1/n$ .

## Calculating expectation

$$\begin{aligned} E[T(n)] &= E\left[\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} X_k (T(k) + T(n-k-1) + \Theta(n))\right] \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} E[X_k (T(k) + T(n-k-1) + \Theta(n))] \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} E[X_k] \cdot E[T(k) + T(n-k-1) + \Theta(n)] \\ &= \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} E[T(k)] + \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} E[T(n-k-1)] + \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \Theta(n) \\ &= \frac{2}{n} \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} E[T(k)] + \Theta(n) \end{aligned}$$

Summations have identical terms.

## Hairy recurrence

$$E[T(n)] = \frac{2}{n} \sum_{k=2}^{n-1} E[T(k)] + \Theta(n)$$

(The  $k=0, 1$  terms can be absorbed in the  $\Theta(n)$ .)

**Prove:**  $E[T(n)] \leq an \lg n$  for constant  $a > 0$ .

- Choose  $a$  large enough so that  $an \lg n$  dominates  $E[T(n)]$  for sufficiently small  $n \geq 2$ .

**Use fact:**  $\sum_{k=2}^{n-1} k \lg k \leq \frac{1}{2} n^2 \lg n - \frac{1}{8} n^2$  (exercise).



## Substitution method

$$E[T(n)] \leq \frac{2}{n} \sum_{k=2}^{n-1} ak \lg k + \Theta(n)$$

Substitute inductive hypothesis.



## Substitution method

$$\begin{aligned} E[T(n)] &\leq \frac{2}{n} \sum_{k=2}^{n-1} ak \lg k + \Theta(n) \\ &\leq \frac{2a}{n} \left( \frac{1}{2} n^2 \lg n - \frac{1}{8} n^2 \right) + \Theta(n) \end{aligned}$$

Use fact.



## Substitution method

$$\begin{aligned} E[T(n)] &\leq \frac{2}{n} \sum_{k=2}^{n-1} ak \lg k + \Theta(n) \\ &\leq \frac{2a}{n} \left( \frac{1}{2} n^2 \lg n - \frac{1}{8} n^2 \right) + \Theta(n) \\ &= an \lg n - \left( \frac{an}{4} - \Theta(n) \right) \end{aligned}$$

Express as *desired – residual*.



## Substitution method

$$\begin{aligned} E[T(n)] &\leq \frac{2}{n} \sum_{k=2}^{n-1} ak \lg k + \Theta(n) \\ &= \frac{2a}{n} \left( \frac{1}{2} n^2 \lg n - \frac{1}{8} n^2 \right) + \Theta(n) \\ &= an \lg n - \left( \frac{an}{4} - \Theta(n) \right) \\ &\leq an \lg n, \end{aligned}$$

if  $a$  is chosen large enough so that  $an/4$  dominates the  $\Theta(n)$ .

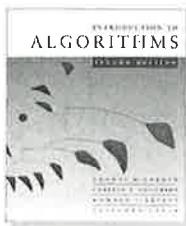


## Quicksort in practice

- Quicksort is a great general-purpose sorting algorithm.
- Quicksort is typically over twice as fast as merge sort.
- Quicksort can benefit substantially from code tuning.
- Quicksort behaves well even with caching and virtual memory.

# Introduction to Algorithms

6.046J/18.401J



## LECTURE 5

### Sorting Lower Bounds

- Decision trees

### Linear-Time Sorting

- Counting sort
- Radix sort

### Appendix: Punched cards

Prof. Erik Demaine

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.1

## How fast can we sort?

All the sorting algorithms we have seen so far are *comparison sorts*: only use comparisons to determine the relative order of elements.

- E.g., insertion sort, merge sort, quicksort, heapsort.

The best worst-case running time that we've seen for comparison sorting is  $O(n \lg n)$ .

*Is  $O(n \lg n)$  the best we can do?*

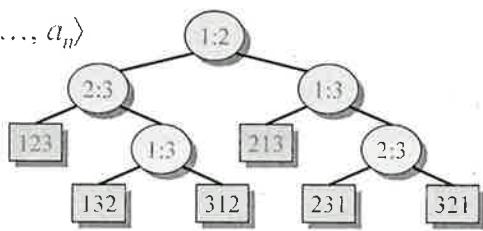
*Decision trees* can help us answer this question.

September 26, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.2

## Decision-tree example

Sort  $\langle a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n \rangle$



Each internal node is labeled  $i:j$  for  $i, j \in \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ .

- The left subtree shows subsequent comparisons if  $a_i \leq a_j$ .
- The right subtree shows subsequent comparisons if  $a_i \geq a_j$ .

September 26, 2005

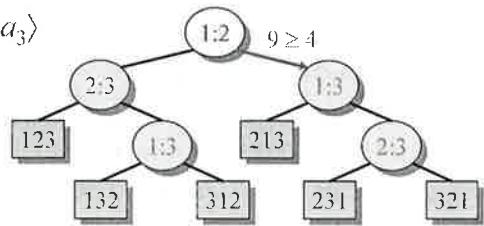
Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.3

## Decision-tree example

Sort  $\langle a_1, a_2, a_3 \rangle$

=  $\langle 9, 4, 6 \rangle$ :



Each internal node is labeled  $i:j$  for  $i, j \in \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ .

- The left subtree shows subsequent comparisons if  $a_i \leq a_j$ .
- The right subtree shows subsequent comparisons if  $a_i \geq a_j$ .

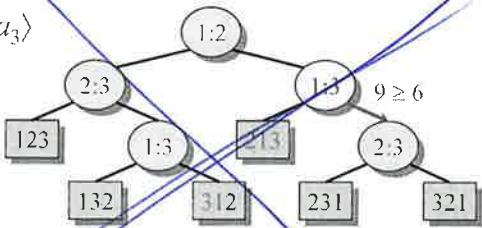
September 26, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.4

## Decision-tree example

Sort  $\langle a_1, a_2, a_3 \rangle$

=  $\langle 9, 4, 6 \rangle$ :



Each internal node is labeled  $i:j$  for  $i, j \in \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ .

- The left subtree shows subsequent comparisons if  $a_i \leq a_j$ .
- The right subtree shows subsequent comparisons if  $a_i \geq a_j$ .

September 26, 2005

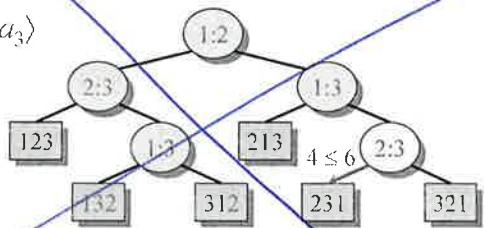
Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.5

## Decision-tree example

Sort  $\langle a_1, a_2, a_3 \rangle$

=  $\langle 9, 4, 6 \rangle$ :



Each internal node is labeled  $i:j$  for  $i, j \in \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ .

- The left subtree shows subsequent comparisons if  $a_i \leq a_j$ .
- The right subtree shows subsequent comparisons if  $a_i \geq a_j$ .

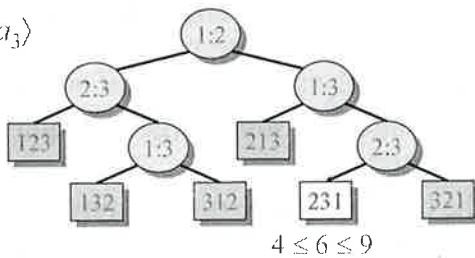
September 26, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.6



## Decision-tree example

Sort  $\langle a_1, a_2, a_3 \rangle = \langle 9, 4, 6 \rangle$ :



Each leaf contains a permutation  $\langle \pi(1), \pi(2), \dots, \pi(n) \rangle$  to indicate that the ordering  $a_{\pi(1)} \leq a_{\pi(2)} \leq \dots \leq a_{\pi(n)}$  has been established.

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.7



## Decision-tree model

A decision tree can model the execution of any comparison sort:

- One tree for each input size  $n$ .
- View the algorithm as splitting whenever it compares two elements.
- The tree contains the comparisons along all possible instruction traces.
- The running time of the algorithm = the length of the path taken.
- Worst-case running time = height of tree.

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.8



## Lower bound for decision-tree sorting

**Theorem.** Any decision tree that can sort  $n$  elements must have height  $\Omega(n \lg n)$ .

*Proof.* The tree must contain  $\geq n!$  leaves, since there are  $n!$  possible permutations. A height- $h$  binary tree has  $\leq 2^h$  leaves. Thus,  $n! \leq 2^h$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore h &\geq \lg(n!) & (\lg \text{ is mono. increasing}) \\ &\geq \lg((n/e)^n) & (\text{Stirling's formula}) \\ &= n \lg n - n \lg e & \text{---} \\ &= \Omega(n \lg n). & \square \end{aligned}$$

$n! \geq (\frac{n}{e})^n$

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.9



## Lower bound for comparison sorting

**Corollary.** Heapsort and merge sort are asymptotically optimal comparison sorting algorithms.  $\square$

September 26, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.10



## Sorting in linear time

**Counting sort:** No comparisons between elements.

- **Input:**  $A[1 \dots n]$ , where  $A[j] \in \{1, 2, \dots, k\}$ .
- **Output:**  $B[1 \dots n]$ , sorted.
- **Auxiliary storage:**  $C[1 \dots k]$ .

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.11



## Counting sort

```

for $i \leftarrow 1$ to k
 do $C[i] \leftarrow 0$
for $j \leftarrow 1$ to n
 do $C[A[j]] \leftarrow C[A[j]] + 1$ $\triangleright C[i] = |\{ \text{key} = i \}|$
for $i \leftarrow 2$ to k
 do $C[i] \leftarrow C[i] + C[i-1]$ $\triangleright C[i] = |\{ \text{key} \leq i \}|$
for $j \leftarrow n$ downto 1
 do $B[C[A[j]]] \leftarrow A[j]$
 $C[A[j]] \leftarrow C[A[j]] - 1$

```

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.12

## Counting-sort example

|    |   |   |   |   |   |
|----|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1  | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |   |
| A: | 4 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 3 |

|    |  |  |  |  |  |
|----|--|--|--|--|--|
| B: |  |  |  |  |  |
|----|--|--|--|--|--|

|    |   |   |   |
|----|---|---|---|
| 1  | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| C: |   |   |   |

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.13

## Loop 1

|    |   |   |   |   |   |
|----|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1  | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |   |
| A: | 4 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 3 |

|    |  |  |  |  |  |
|----|--|--|--|--|--|
| B: |  |  |  |  |  |
|----|--|--|--|--|--|

```
for i ← 1 to k
 do C[i] ← 0
```

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.14

## Loop 2

|    |   |   |   |   |   |
|----|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1  | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |   |
| A: | 4 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 3 |

|    |  |  |  |  |  |
|----|--|--|--|--|--|
| B: |  |  |  |  |  |
|----|--|--|--|--|--|

```
for j ← 1 to n
 do C[A[j]] ← C[A[j]] + 1 ▷ C[i] = |{key = i}|
```

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.15

## Loop 2

|    |   |   |   |   |   |
|----|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1  | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |   |
| A: | 4 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 3 |

|    |  |  |  |  |  |
|----|--|--|--|--|--|
| B: |  |  |  |  |  |
|----|--|--|--|--|--|

```
for j ← 1 to n
 do C[A[j]] ← C[A[j]] + 1 ▷ C[i] = |{key = i}|
```

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.16

## Loop 2

|    |   |   |   |   |   |
|----|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1  | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |   |
| A: | 4 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 3 |

|    |  |  |  |  |  |
|----|--|--|--|--|--|
| B: |  |  |  |  |  |
|----|--|--|--|--|--|

```
for j ← 1 to n
 do C[A[j]] ← C[A[j]] + 1 ▷ C[i] = |{key = i}|
```

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.17

## Loop 2

|    |   |   |   |   |   |
|----|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1  | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |   |
| A: | 4 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 3 |

|    |  |  |  |  |  |
|----|--|--|--|--|--|
| B: |  |  |  |  |  |
|----|--|--|--|--|--|

```
for j ← 1 to n
 do C[A[j]] ← C[A[j]] + 1 ▷ C[i] = |{key = i}|
```

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.18



## Loop 2

|    |   |   |   |   |   |
|----|---|---|---|---|---|
|    | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| A: | 4 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 3 |

|    |   |   |   |   |
|----|---|---|---|---|
|    | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| C: | 1 | 0 | 2 | 2 |

|    |     |     |     |     |     |
|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| B: | [ ] | [ ] | [ ] | [ ] | [ ] |
|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|

```
for j ← 1 to n
do C[A[j]] ← C[A[j]] + 1 ▷ C[i] = |{key = i}|
```

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.19



## Loop 3

|    |   |   |   |   |   |
|----|---|---|---|---|---|
|    | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| A: | 4 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 3 |

|    |   |   |   |   |
|----|---|---|---|---|
|    | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| C: | 1 | 0 | 2 | 2 |

|    |     |     |     |     |     |
|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| B: | [ ] | [ ] | [ ] | [ ] | [ ] |
|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|

|     |   |   |   |   |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
|     | 1 | 1 | 2 | 2 |
| C': | 1 | 1 | 2 | 2 |

```
for i ← 2 to k
do C[i] ← C[i] + C[i-1] ▷ C[i] = |{key ≤ i}|
```

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.20

## Loop 3

|    |   |   |   |   |   |
|----|---|---|---|---|---|
|    | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| A: | 4 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 3 |

|    |   |   |   |   |
|----|---|---|---|---|
|    | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| C: | 1 | 0 | 2 | 2 |

|    |     |     |     |     |     |
|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| B: | [ ] | [ ] | [ ] | [ ] | [ ] |
|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|

|    |   |   |   |   |
|----|---|---|---|---|
|    | 1 | 1 | 3 | 2 |
| C: | 1 | 1 | 3 | 2 |

```
for i ← 2 to k
do C[i] ← C[i] + C[i-1] ▷ C[i] = |{key ≤ i}|
```

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.21

## Loop 3

|    |   |   |   |   |   |
|----|---|---|---|---|---|
|    | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| A: | 4 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 3 |

|    |   |   |   |   |
|----|---|---|---|---|
|    | 1 | 0 | 2 | 2 |
| C: | 1 | 0 | 2 | 2 |

|    |     |     |     |     |     |
|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| B: | [ ] | [ ] | [ ] | [ ] | [ ] |
|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|

|     |   |   |   |   |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
|     | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| C': | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |

```
for i ← 2 to k
do C[i] ← C[i] + C[i-1] ▷ C[i] = |{key ≤ i}|
```

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.22

## Loop 4

|    |   |   |   |   |   |
|----|---|---|---|---|---|
|    | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| A: | 4 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 3 |

|    |   |   |   |   |
|----|---|---|---|---|
|    | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| C: | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |

|    |     |     |     |     |     |
|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| B: | [ ] | [ ] | [ ] | [ ] | [ ] |
|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|

|     |   |   |   |   |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
|     | 1 | 1 | 2 | 5 |
| C': | 1 | 1 | 2 | 5 |

```
for j ← n downto 1
do B[C[A[j]]] ← A[j]
C[A[j]] ← C[A[j]] - 1
```

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.23

## Loop 4

|    |   |   |   |   |   |
|----|---|---|---|---|---|
|    | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| A: | 4 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 3 |

|    |   |   |   |   |
|----|---|---|---|---|
|    | 1 | 1 | 2 | 5 |
| C: | 1 | 1 | 2 | 5 |

|    |     |     |     |     |     |
|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| B: | [ ] | [ ] | [ ] | [ ] | [ ] |
|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|

|     |   |   |   |   |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
|     | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| C': | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |

```
for j ← n downto 1
do B[C[A[j]]] ← A[j]
C[A[j]] ← C[A[j]] - 1
```

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.24

## Loop 4

|    |   |   |   |   |   |
|----|---|---|---|---|---|
| A: | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| B: | 4 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 3 |

|     |   |   |   |   |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| C:  | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| C': | 1 | 1 | 4 |   |

```
for j ← n downto 1
 do B[C[A[j]]] ← A[j]
 C[A[j]] ← C[A[j]] - 1
```

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.25

## Loop 4

|    |   |   |   |   |   |
|----|---|---|---|---|---|
| A: | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| B: | 4 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 3 |

|     |   |   |   |   |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| C:  | 1 | 1 | 1 | 4 |
| C': | 0 | 1 | 1 | 4 |

```
for j ← n downto 1
 do B[C[A[j]]] ← A[j]
 C[A[j]] ← C[A[j]] - 1
```

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.26

## Loop 4

|    |   |   |   |   |   |
|----|---|---|---|---|---|
| A: | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| B: | 4 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 3 |
| C: | 0 | 1 | 1 | 4 |   |

|     |   |   |   |   |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| C:  | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| C': | 0 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
|     |   |   |   |   |

```
for j ← n downto 1
 do B[C[A[j]]] ← A[j]
 C[A[j]] ← C[A[j]] - 1
```

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.27

## Analysis

$$\begin{aligned} \Theta(k) & \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{for } i \leftarrow 1 \text{ to } k \\ \quad \text{do } C[i] \leftarrow 0 \end{array} \right. \\ \Theta(n) & \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{for } j \leftarrow 1 \text{ to } n \\ \quad \text{do } C[A[j]] \leftarrow C[A[j]] + 1 \end{array} \right. \\ \Theta(k) & \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{for } i \leftarrow 2 \text{ to } k \\ \quad \text{do } C[i] \leftarrow C[i] + C[i-1] \end{array} \right. \\ \Theta(n) & \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{for } j \leftarrow n \text{ downto } 1 \\ \quad \text{do } B[C[A[j]]] \leftarrow A[j] \\ \quad C[A[j]] \leftarrow C[A[j]] - 1 \end{array} \right. \end{aligned}$$

$\Theta(n+k)$  if big, bad.

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.28

## Running time

If  $k = O(n)$ , then counting sort takes  $\Theta(n)$  time.

- But, sorting takes  $\Omega(n \lg n)$  time!
- Where's the fallacy?

**Answer:**

- *Comparison sorting* takes  $\Omega(n \lg n)$  time.
- Counting sort is not a *comparison sort*.
- In fact, not a single comparison between elements occurs!

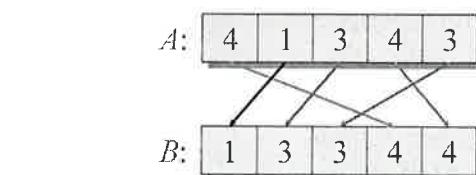
September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.29

## Stable sorting

Counting sort is a *stable* sort: it preserves the input order among equal elements.



**Exercise:** What other sorts have this property?

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.30



## Radix sort

- **Origin:** Herman Hollerith's card-sorting machine for the 1890 U.S. Census. (See Appendix B.)
- Digit-by-digit sort.
- Hollerith's original (bad) idea: sort on most-significant digit first.
- Good idea: Sort on *least-significant digit first* with auxiliary *stable* sort.

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.31



## Operation of radix sort

|       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 3 2 9 | 7 2 0 | 7 2 0 | 3 2 9 |
| 4 5 7 | 3 5 5 | 3 2 9 | 3 5 5 |
| 6 5 7 | 4 3 6 | 4 3 6 | 4 3 6 |
| 8 3 9 | 4 5 7 | 8 3 9 | 4 5 7 |
| 4 3 6 | 6 5 7 | 3 5 5 | 6 5 7 |
| 7 2 0 | 3 2 9 | 4 5 7 | 7 2 0 |
| 3 5 5 | 8 3 9 | 6 5 7 | 8 3 9 |

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.32



## Correctness of radix sort

### Induction on digit position

- Assume that the numbers are sorted by their low-order  $t-1$  digits.
  - Sort on digit  $t$
- |       |       |
|-------|-------|
| 7 2 0 | 3 2 9 |
| 3 2 9 | 3 5 5 |
| 4 3 6 | 4 3 6 |
| 8 3 9 | 4 5 7 |
| 3 5 5 | 6 5 7 |
| 4 5 7 | 7 2 0 |
| 6 5 7 | 8 3 9 |
- 

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.33



## Correctness of radix sort

### Induction on digit position

- Assume that the numbers are sorted by their low-order  $t-1$  digits.
  - Sort on digit  $t$ 
    - Two numbers that differ in digit  $t$  are correctly sorted.
- |       |       |
|-------|-------|
| 7 2 0 | 3 2 9 |
| 3 2 9 | 3 5 5 |
| 4 3 6 | 4 3 6 |
| 8 3 9 | 4 5 7 |
| 3 5 5 | 6 5 7 |
| 4 5 7 | 7 2 0 |
| 6 5 7 | 8 3 9 |
- 

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.34



## Correctness of radix sort

### Induction on digit position

- Assume that the numbers are sorted by their low-order  $t-1$  digits.
  - Sort on digit  $t$ 
    - Two numbers that differ in digit  $t$  are correctly sorted.
    - Two numbers equal in digit  $t$  are put in the same order as the input  $\Rightarrow$  correct order.
- |       |       |
|-------|-------|
| 7 2 0 | 3 2 9 |
| 3 2 9 | 3 5 5 |
| 4 3 6 | 4 3 6 |
| 8 3 9 | 4 5 7 |
| 3 5 5 | 6 5 7 |
| 4 5 7 | 7 2 0 |
| 6 5 7 | 8 3 9 |
- 

Sensitivity 1

Sensitivity 2

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.35



## Analysis of radix sort

- Assume counting sort is the auxiliary stable sort.
- Sort  $n$  computer words of  $b$  bits each.  $[0, 2^b - 1]$
- Each word can be viewed as having  $b/r$  base- $2^b$  digits.

Example: 32-bit word

$r = 8 \Rightarrow b/r = 4$  passes of counting sort on base- $2^3$  digits; or  $r = 16 \Rightarrow b/r = 2$  passes of counting sort on base- $2^{16}$  digits.

How many passes should we make?

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.36



## Analysis (continued)

**Recall:** Counting sort takes  $\Theta(n + k)$  time to sort  $n$  numbers in the range from 0 to  $k - 1$ . If each  $b$ -bit word is broken into  $r$ -bit pieces, each pass of counting sort takes  $\Theta(n + 2^r)$  time. Since there are  $b/r$  passes, we have

$$T(n, b) = \Theta\left(\frac{b}{r}(n + 2^r)\right)$$

Choose  $r$  to minimize  $T(n, b)$ :

- Increasing  $r$  means fewer passes, but as  $r \gg \lg n$ , the time grows exponentially.

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.37



## Choosing $r$

$$T(n, b) = \Theta\left(\frac{b}{r}(n + 2^r)\right)$$

Minimize  $T(n, b)$  by differentiating and setting to 0.

Or, just observe that we don't want  $2^r \gg n$ , and there's no harm asymptotically in choosing  $r$  as large as possible subject to this constraint.

Choosing  $r = \lg n$  implies  $T(n, b) = \Theta(bn/\lg n)$ .

For numbers in the range from 0 to  $n^d - 1$ , we have  $b = d \lg n \Rightarrow$  radix sort runs in  $\Theta(dn)$  time.

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.38

$2^b - 1$  important



## Conclusions

In practice, radix sort is fast for large inputs, as well as simple to code and maintain.

**Example** (32-bit numbers):

- At most 3 passes when sorting  $\geq 2000$  numbers.
- Merge sort and quicksort do at least  $\lceil \lg 2000 \rceil = 11$  passes.

**Downside:** Unlike quicksort, radix sort displays little locality of reference, and thus a well-tuned quicksort fares better on modern processors, which feature steep memory hierarchies.

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.39



## Appendix: Punched-card technology

- Herman Hollerith (1860-1929)
- Punched cards
- Hollerith's tabulating system
- Operation of the sorter
- Origin of radix sort
- “Modern” IBM card
- Web resources on punched-card technology

Return to last slide viewed

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.40



## Herman Hollerith (1860-1929)

- The 1880 U.S. Census took almost 10 years to process.
- While a lecturer at MIT, Hollerith prototyped punched-card technology.
- His machines, including a “card sorter,” allowed the 1890 census total to be reported in 6 weeks.
- He founded the Tabulating Machine Company in 1911, which merged with other companies in 1924 to form International Business Machines.

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.41



## Punched cards

- Punched card = data record.
- Hole = value.
- Algorithm = machine + human operator.

Hollerith's tabulating system, punch card in Genealogy Article on the Internet

*Image removed due to copyright restrictions.*  
Replica of punch card from the 1900 U.S. census. [\[Howells 2000\]](#)

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.42



## Hollerith's tabulating system

- Pantograph card punch
- Hand-press reader
- Dial counters
- Sorting box

*Image removed due to copyright restrictions.*

"Hollerith Tabulator and Sorter: Showing details of the mechanical counter and the tabulator press." Figure from [Howells 2000].

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.43



## Operation of the sorter

- An operator inserts a card into the press.
- Pins on the press reach through the punched holes to make electrical contact with mercury-filled cups beneath the card.
- Whenever a particular digit value is punched, the lid of the corresponding sorting bin lifts.
- The operator deposits the card into the bin and closes the lid.
- When all cards have been processed, the front panel is opened, and the cards are collected in order, yielding one pass of a stable sort.

*Image removed due to copyright restrictions.*

Hollerith Tabulator, Pantograph, Press, and Sorter (<http://www.columbia.edu/acis/history/census-tabulator.html>)

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.44



## Origin of radix sort

Hollerith's original 1889 patent alludes to a most-significant-digit-first radix sort:

*"The most complicated combinations can readily be counted with comparatively few counters or relays by first assorting the cards according to the first items entering into the combinations, then reassorting each group according to the second item entering into the combination, and so on, and finally counting on a few counters the last item of the combination for each group of cards."*

Least-significant-digit-first radix sort seems to be a folk invention originated by machine operators.

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.45



## "Modern" IBM card

- One character per column.

*Image removed due to copyright restrictions.*

To view image, visit  
<http://www.museumwaalsdorp.nl/computer/images/ibmcard.jpg>

Produced by  
the WWW  
Virtual Punch-  
Card Server.

*So, that's why text windows have 80 columns!*

September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.46



## Web resources on punched-card technology

- [Doug Jones's punched card index](#)
- [Biography of Herman Hollerith](#)
- [The 1890 U.S. Census](#)
- [Early history of IBM](#)
- [Pictures of Hollerith's inventions](#)
- [Hollerith's patent application](#) (borrowed from [Gordon Bell's CyberMuseum](#))
- [Impact of punched cards on U.S. history](#)

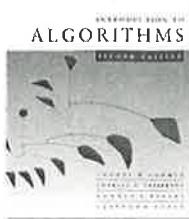
September 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L5.47

# Introduction to Algorithms

6.046J/18.401J



## LECTURE 6

### Order Statistics

- Randomized divide and conquer
- Analysis of expected time
- Worst-case linear-time order statistics
- Analysis

Prof. Erik Demaine

September 28, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L6.1

ALGORITHMS

## Order statistics

Select the  $i$ th smallest of  $n$  elements (the element with *rank*  $i$ ).

- $i = 1$ : **minimum**;
- $i = n$ : **maximum**;
- $i = \lfloor (n+1)/2 \rfloor$  or  $\lceil (n+1)/2 \rceil$ : **median**.

**Naive algorithm:** Sort and index  $i$ th element.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Worst-case running time} &= \Theta(n \lg n) + \Theta(1) \\ &= \Theta(n \lg n), \end{aligned}$$

using merge sort or heapsort (*not* quicksort).

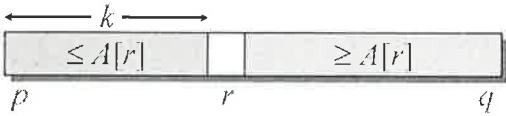
September 28, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L6.2

## Randomized divide-and-conquer algorithm

RAND-SELECT( $A, p, q, i$ )  $\triangleright$   $i$ th smallest of  $A[p..q]$   
if  $p = q$  then return  $A[p]$   
 $r \leftarrow \text{RAND-PARTITION}(A, p, q)$   
 $k \leftarrow r - p + 1$   $\triangleright k = \text{rank}(A[r])$   
if  $i = k$  then return  $A[r]$   
if  $i < k$   
then return RAND-SELECT( $A, p, r - 1, i$ )  
else return RAND-SELECT( $A, r + 1, q, i - k$ )



September 28, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L6.3

## Example

Select the  $i = 7$ th smallest:

|       |    |    |   |   |   |   |    |         |
|-------|----|----|---|---|---|---|----|---------|
| 6     | 10 | 13 | 5 | 8 | 3 | 2 | 11 | $i = 7$ |
| pivot |    |    |   |   |   |   |    |         |

Partition:

|                                                                           |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|---------|
| 2                                                                         | 5 | 3 | 6 | 8 | 13 | 10 | 11 | $k = 4$ |
| $\brace{ }_{\text{Select the } 7 - 4 = 3\text{rd smallest recursively.}}$ |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |         |

Select the  $7 - 4 = 3$ rd smallest recursively.

September 28, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L6.4

## Intuition for analysis

(All our analyses today assume that all elements are distinct.)

Lucky:

$$T(n) = T(9n/10) + \Theta(n) = \Theta(n)$$

$$n^{\log_{10/9} 1} = n^0 = 1 \quad \text{CASE 3}$$

Unlucky:

$$T(n) = T(n-1) + \Theta(n) = \Theta(n^2)$$

arithmetic series

Worse than sorting!

September 28, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L6.5



## Analysis of expected time

The analysis follows that of randomized quicksort, but it's a little different.

Let  $T(n)$  = the random variable for the running time of RAND-SELECT on an input of size  $n$ , assuming random numbers are independent.

For  $k = 0, 1, \dots, n-1$ , define the indicator random variable

$$X_k = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if PARTITION generates a } k : n-k-1 \text{ split,} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

September 28, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L6.6



## Analysis (continued)

To obtain an upper bound, assume that the  $i$ th element always falls in the larger side of the partition:

$$T(n) = \begin{cases} T(\max\{0, n-1\}) + \Theta(n) & \text{if } 0:n-1 \text{ split,} \\ T(\max\{1, n-2\}) + \Theta(n) & \text{if } 1:n-2 \text{ split,} \\ \vdots \\ T(\max\{n-1, 0\}) + \Theta(n) & \text{if } n-1:0 \text{ split,} \end{cases}$$

$$= \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} X_k (T(\max\{k, n-k-1\}) + \Theta(n)).$$

September 28, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L6.7



## Calculating expectation

$$E[T(n)] = E\left[\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} X_k (T(\max\{k, n-k-1\}) + \Theta(n))\right]$$

Take expectations of both sides.

September 28, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L6.8



## Calculating expectation

$$E[T(n)] = E\left[\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} X_k (T(\max\{k, n-k-1\}) + \Theta(n))\right]$$

$$= \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} E[X_k] (T(\max\{k, n-k-1\}) + \Theta(n))$$

Linearity of expectation.

September 28, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L6.9



## Calculating expectation

$$E[T(n)] = E\left[\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} X_k (T(\max\{k, n-k-1\}) + \Theta(n))\right]$$

$$= \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} E[X_k] (T(\max\{k, n-k-1\}) + \Theta(n))$$

$$= \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} E[X_k] \cdot E[T(\max\{k, n-k-1\}) + \Theta(n)]$$

Independence of  $X_k$  from other random choices.

September 28, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L6.10



## Calculating expectation

$$E[T(n)] = E\left[\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} X_k (T(\max\{k, n-k-1\}) + \Theta(n))\right]$$

$$= \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} E[X_k] (T(\max\{k, n-k-1\}) + \Theta(n))$$

$$= \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} E[X_k] \cdot E[T(\max\{k, n-k-1\}) + \Theta(n)]$$

$$= \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} E[T(\max\{k, n-k-1\})] + \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \Theta(n)$$

Linearity of expectation;  $E[X_k] = 1/n$ .

September 28, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L6.11



## Calculating expectation

$$E[T(n)] = E\left[\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} X_k (T(\max\{k, n-k-1\}) + \Theta(n))\right]$$

$$= \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} E[X_k] (T(\max\{k, n-k-1\}) + \Theta(n))$$

$$= \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} E[X_k] \cdot E[T(\max\{k, n-k-1\}) + \Theta(n)]$$

$$= \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} E[T(\max\{k, n-k-1\})] + \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \Theta(n)$$

$$\leq \frac{2}{n} \sum_{k=\lfloor n/2 \rfloor}^{n-1} E[T(k)] + \Theta(n)$$

Upper terms appear twice.

September 28, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L6.12

## Hairy recurrence

(But not quite as hairy as the quicksort one.)

$$E[T(n)] = \frac{2}{n} \sum_{k=\lfloor n/2 \rfloor}^{n-1} E[T(k)] + \Theta(n)$$

**Prove:**  $E[T(n)] \leq cn$  for constant  $c > 0$ .

- The constant  $c$  can be chosen large enough so that  $E[T(n)] \leq cn$  for the base cases.

**Use fact:**  $\sum_{k=\lfloor n/2 \rfloor}^{n-1} k \leq \frac{3}{8}n^2$  (exercise).

September 28, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L6.13

## Substitution method

~~$$E[T(n)] \leq \frac{2}{n} \sum_{k=\lfloor n/2 \rfloor}^{n-1} ck + \Theta(n)$$~~

Substitute inductive hypothesis.

September 28, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L6.14

## Substitution method

~~$$\begin{aligned} E[T(n)] &\leq \frac{2}{n} \sum_{k=\lfloor n/2 \rfloor}^{n-1} ck + \Theta(n) \\ &\leq \frac{2c}{n} \left( \frac{3}{8}n^2 \right) + \Theta(n) \end{aligned}$$~~

Use fact.

September 28, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L6.15

## Substitution method

~~$$\begin{aligned} E[T(n)] &\leq \frac{2}{n} \sum_{k=\lfloor n/2 \rfloor}^{n-1} ck + \Theta(n) \\ &\leq \frac{2c}{n} \left( \frac{3}{8}n^2 \right) + \Theta(n) \\ &= cn - \left( \frac{cn - \Theta(n)}{4} \right) \end{aligned}$$~~

Express as *desired – residual*.

September 28, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L6.16

## Substitution method

$$\begin{aligned} E[T(n)] &\leq \frac{2}{n} \sum_{k=\lfloor n/2 \rfloor}^{n-1} ck + \Theta(n) \\ &\leq \frac{2c}{n} \left( \frac{3}{8}n^2 \right) + \Theta(n) \\ &= cn - \left( \frac{cn - \Theta(n)}{4} \right) \\ &\leq cn, \end{aligned}$$

if  $c$  is chosen large enough so that  $cn/4$  dominates the  $\Theta(n)$ .

September 28, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L6.17

## Summary of randomized order-statistic selection

- Works fast: linear expected time.
  - Excellent algorithm in practice.
  - But, the worst case is *very* bad:  $\Theta(n^2)$ .
- Q.** Is there an algorithm that runs in linear time in the worst case?
- A.** Yes, due to Blum, Floyd, Pratt, Rivest, and Tarjan [1973].

**IDEA:** Generate a good pivot recursively.

September 28, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L6.18



## Worst-case linear-time order statistics

`SELECT( $i, n$ )`

1. Divide the  $n$  elements into groups of 5. Find the median of each 5-element group by rote.
2. Recursively `SELECT` the median  $x$  of the  $\lfloor n/5 \rfloor$  group medians to be the pivot.
3. Partition around the pivot  $x$ . Let  $k = \text{rank}(x)$ .
4. **if**  $i = k$  **then return**  $x$
- elseif**  $i < k$   
     **then** recursively `SELECT` the  $i$ th smallest element in the lower part
- else** recursively `SELECT` the  $(i-k)$ th smallest element in the upper part

Same as  
RAND-  
SELECT

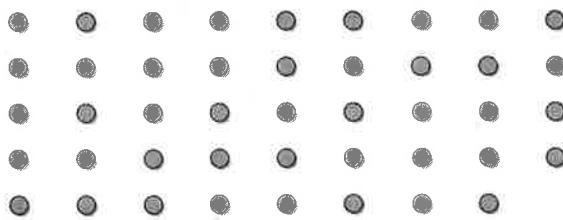
September 28, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L6.19



## Choosing the pivot

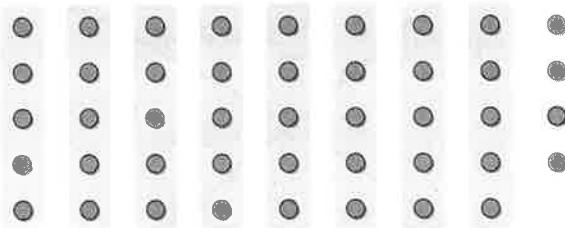


September 28, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L6.20



## Choosing the pivot



1. Divide the  $n$  elements into groups of 5.

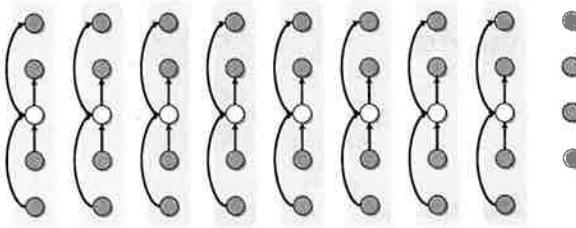
September 28, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L6.21



## Choosing the pivot



1. Divide the  $n$  elements into groups of 5. Find the median of each 5-element group by rote.

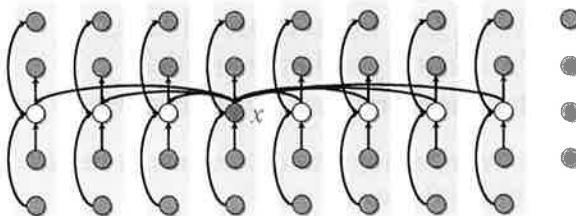
*lesser*  
 $\Theta(n)$   
*greater*

September 28, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L6.22



## Choosing the pivot



1. Divide the  $n$  elements into groups of 5. Find the median of each 5-element group by rote.
2. Recursively `SELECT` the median  $x$  of the  $\lfloor n/5 \rfloor$  group medians to be the pivot.

*lesser*  
 $\bullet$   
*greater*

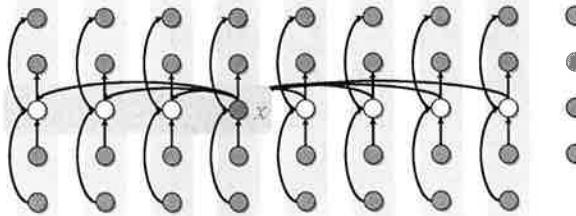
September 28, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L6.23



## Analysis



At least half the group medians are  $\leq x$ , which is at least  $\lfloor n/5 \rfloor/2 = \lfloor n/10 \rfloor$  group medians.

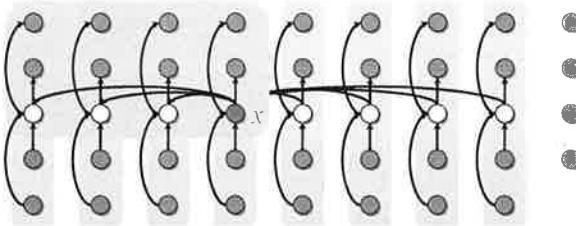
*lesser*  
 $\bullet$   
*greater*

September 28, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L6.24

## Analysis

(Assume all elements are distinct.)



lesser  
greater

L6.25

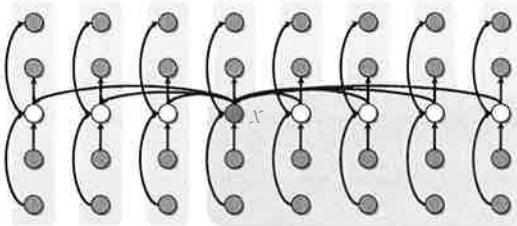
At least half the group medians are  $\leq x$ , which is at least  $\lfloor \lfloor n/5 \rfloor /2 \rfloor = \lfloor n/10 \rfloor$  group medians.

- Therefore, at least  $3\lfloor n/10 \rfloor$  elements are  $\leq x$ .

September 28, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

## Analysis

(Assume all elements are distinct.)



lesser  
greater

L6.26

At least half the group medians are  $\leq x$ , which is at least  $\lfloor \lfloor n/5 \rfloor /2 \rfloor = \lfloor n/10 \rfloor$  group medians.

- Therefore, at least  $3\lfloor n/10 \rfloor$  elements are  $\leq x$ .

- Similarly, at least  $3\lfloor n/10 \rfloor$  elements are  $\geq x$ .

September 28, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

## Minor simplification

- For  $n \geq 50$ , we have  $3\lfloor n/10 \rfloor \geq n/4$ .
- Therefore, for  $n \geq 50$  the recursive call to SELECT in Step 4 is executed recursively on  $\leq 3n/4$  elements.
- Thus, the recurrence for running time can assume that Step 4 takes time  $T(3n/4)$  in the worst case.
- For  $n < 50$ , we know that the worst-case time is  $T(n) = \Theta(1)$ .

September 28, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L6.27

## Developing the recurrence

|                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| $T(n)$<br>$\Theta(n)$<br>$T(n/5)$<br>$\Theta(n)$<br>$T(3n/4)$ | <b>SELECT(<math>i, n</math>)</b><br><div style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 10px;">         1. Divide the <math>n</math> elements into groups of 5. Find the median of each 5-element group by rote.<br/>         2. Recursively SELECT the median <math>x</math> of the <math>\lfloor n/5 \rfloor</math> group medians to be the pivot.<br/>         3. Partition around the pivot <math>x</math>. Let <math>k = \text{rank}(x)</math>.<br/>         4. if <math>i = k</math> then return <math>x</math><br/>         elseif <math>i &lt; k</math><br/>             then recursively SELECT the <math>i</math>th smallest element in the lower part<br/>         else recursively SELECT the <math>(i-k)</math>th smallest element in the upper part       </div> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

September 28, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L6.28

## Solving the recurrence

$$T(n) = T\left(\frac{1}{5}n\right) + T\left(\frac{3}{4}n\right) + \Theta(n)$$

**Substitution:**

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &\leq \frac{1}{5}cn + \frac{3}{4}cn + \Theta(n) \\ T(n) &\leq cn \\ &= \frac{19}{20}cn + \Theta(n) \\ &= cn - \left(\frac{1}{20}cn - \Theta(n)\right) \\ &\leq cn, \end{aligned}$$

if  $c$  is chosen large enough to handle both the  $\Theta(n)$  and the initial conditions.

September 28, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L6.29

## Conclusions

- Since the work at each level of recursion is a constant fraction ( $19/20$ ) smaller, the work per level is a geometric series dominated by the linear work at the root.
- In practice, this algorithm runs slowly, because the constant in front of  $n$  is large.
- The randomized algorithm is far more practical.

**Exercise:** Why not divide into groups of 3?

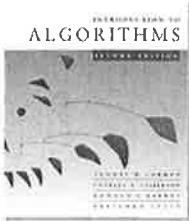
September 28, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L6.30



# Introduction to Algorithms

6.046J/18.401J



## LECTURE 7

### Hashing I

- Direct-access tables
- Resolving collisions by chaining
- Choosing hash functions
- Open addressing

Prof. Charles E. Leiserson

October 3, 2005

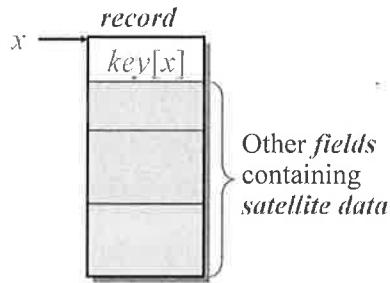
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.1



## Symbol-table problem

Symbol table  $S$  holding  $n$  records:



- Operations on  $S$ :
- INSERT( $S, x$ )
  - DELETE( $S, x$ )
  - SEARCH( $S, k$ )

How should the data structure  $S$  be organized?

October 3, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.2



## Direct-access table

**IDEA:** Suppose that the keys are drawn from the set  $U \subseteq \{0, 1, \dots, m-1\}$ , and keys are distinct. Set up an array  $T[0 \dots m-1]$ :

$$T[k] = \begin{cases} x & \text{if } x \in K \text{ and } \text{key}[x] = k, \\ \text{NIL} & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Then, operations take  $\Theta(1)$  time.

**Problem:** The range of keys can be large:

- 64-bit numbers (which represent 18,446,744,073,709,551,616 different keys),
- character strings (even larger!).

October 3, 2005

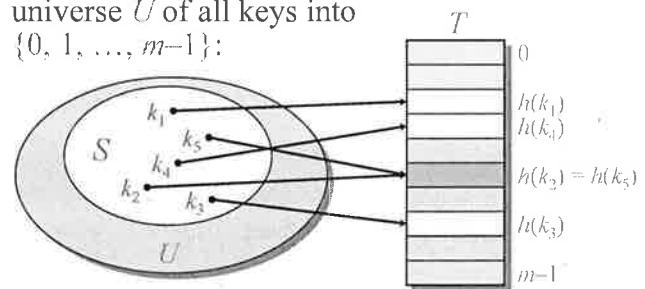
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.3



## Hash functions

**Solution:** Use a *hash function*  $h$  to map the universe  $U$  of all keys into  $\{0, 1, \dots, m-1\}$ :



When a record to be inserted maps to an already occupied slot in  $T$ , a *collision* occurs.

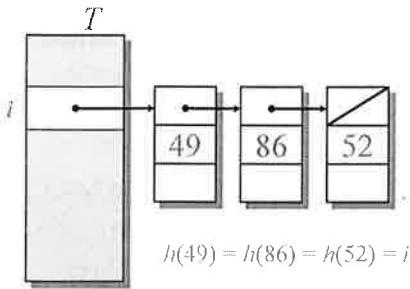
October 3, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.4



## Resolving collisions by chaining

- Link records in the same slot into a list.



*Worst case:*

- Every key hashes to the same slot.
- Access time =  $\Theta(n)$  if  $|S| = n$

October 3, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.5



## Average-case analysis of chaining

We make the assumption of *simple uniform hashing*:

- Each key  $k \in S$  is equally likely to be hashed to any slot of table  $T$ , independent of where other keys are hashed.

Let  $n$  be the number of keys in the table, and let  $m$  be the number of slots.

Define the *load factor* of  $T$  to be

$$\alpha = n/m$$

≡ average number of keys per slot.

October 3, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.6



## Search cost

The expected time for an unsuccessful search for a record with a given key is  
 $= \Theta(1 + \alpha)$ .

*search and return null*

October 3, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.7



## Search cost

The expected time for an unsuccessful search for a record with a given key is  
 $= \Theta(1 + \alpha)$

*search the list*  
*apply hash function and access slot*

October 3, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.8



## Search cost

The expected time for an unsuccessful search for a record with a given key is  
 $= \Theta(1 + \alpha)$

*search the list*

apply hash function and access slot  
 Expected search time  $= \Theta(1)$  if  $\alpha = O(1)$ , or equivalently, if  $n = O(m)$ .

October 3, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.9



## Search cost

The expected time for an unsuccessful search for a record with a given key is  
 $= \Theta(1 + \alpha)$

*search the list*  
*apply hash function and access slot*

Expected search time  $= \Theta(1)$  if  $\alpha = O(1)$ , or equivalently, if  $n = O(m)$ .

A **successful** search has same asymptotic bound, but a rigorous argument is a little more complicated. (See textbook.)

October 3, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.10



## Choosing a hash function

The assumption of simple uniform hashing is hard to guarantee, but several common techniques tend to work well in practice as long as their deficiencies can be avoided.

### Desirata:

- A good hash function should distribute the keys uniformly into the slots of the table.
- Regularity in the key distribution should not affect this uniformity.

October 3, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.11



## Division method

Assume all keys are integers, and define  
 $h(k) = k \bmod m$ .

**Deficiency:** Don't pick an  $m$  that has a small divisor  $d$ . A preponderance of keys that are congruent modulo  $d$  can adversely affect uniformity.

**Extreme deficiency:** If  $m = 2^r$ , then the hash doesn't even depend on all the bits of  $k$ :

- If  $k = 1011000111011010_2$  and  $r = 6$ , then  
 $h(k) = 011010_2$        $h(k)$

October 3, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.12



## Division method (continued)

$$h(k) = k \bmod m.$$

Pick  $m$  to be a prime not too close to a power of 2 or 10 and not otherwise used prominently in the computing environment.

### Annoyance:

- Sometimes, making the table size a prime is inconvenient.

But, this method is popular, although the next method we'll see is usually superior.

October 3, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.13



## Multiplication method

Assume that all keys are integers,  $m = 2^r$ , and our computer has  $w$ -bit words. Define

$$h(k) = (A \cdot k \bmod 2^w) \text{ rsh } (w - r),$$

where `rsh` is the “bitwise right-shift” operator and  $A$  is an odd integer in the range  $2^{w-1} < A < 2^w$ .

- Don't pick  $A$  too close to  $2^{w-1}$  or  $2^w$ .
- Multiplication modulo  $2^w$  is fast compared to division.
- The `rsh` operator is fast.

October 3, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

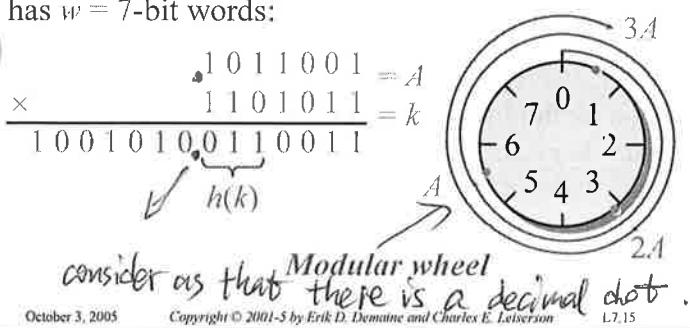
L7.14



## Multiplication method example

$$h(k) = (A \cdot k \bmod 2^w) \text{ rsh } (w - r)$$

Suppose that  $m = 8 = 2^3$  and that our computer has  $w = 7$ -bit words:



October 3, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.15



## Resolving collisions by open addressing

No storage is used outside of the hash table itself.

- Insertion systematically probes the table until an empty slot is found.
- The hash function depends on both the key and probe number:  

$$h : U \times \{0, 1, \dots, m-1\} \rightarrow \{0, 1, \dots, m-1\}.$$
- The probe sequence  $\langle h(k,0), h(k,1), \dots, h(k,m-1) \rangle$  should be a permutation of  $\{0, 1, \dots, m-1\}$ .
- The table may fill up, and deletion is difficult (but not impossible).

October 3, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

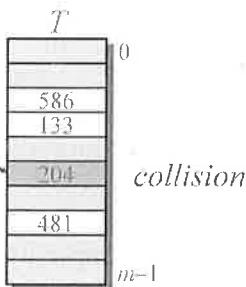
L7.16



## Example of open addressing

Insert key  $k = 496$ :

0. Probe  $h(496,0)$



October 3, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

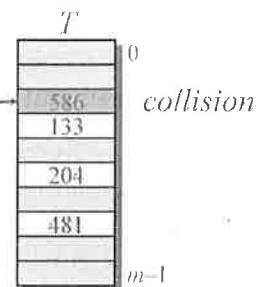
L7.17



## Example of open addressing

Insert key  $k = 496$ :

0. Probe  $h(496,0)$
1. Probe  $h(496,1)$



October 3, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

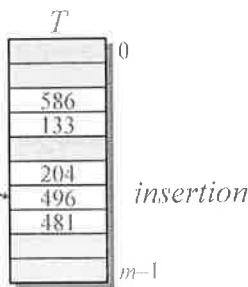
L7.18



## Example of open addressing

Insert key  $k = 496$ :

0. Probe  $h(496,0)$
1. Probe  $h(496,1)$
2. Probe  $h(496,2)$



October 3, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.19

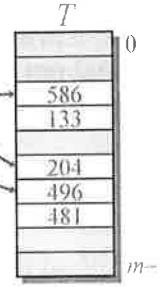


## Example of open addressing

Search for key  $k = 496$ :

0. Probe  $h(496,0)$
1. Probe  $h(496,1)$
2. Probe  $h(496,2)$

Search uses the same probe sequence, terminating successfully if it finds the key and unsuccessfully if it encounters an empty slot.



October 3, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.20



## Probing strategies

### Linear probing:

Given an ordinary hash function  $h'(k)$ , linear probing uses the hash function

$$h(k,i) = (h'(k) + i) \bmod m.$$

This method, though simple, suffers from **primary clustering**, where long runs of occupied slots build up, increasing the average search time. Moreover, the long runs of occupied slots tend to get longer.

October 3, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.21



## Probing strategies

### Double hashing

Given two ordinary hash functions  $h_1(k)$  and  $h_2(k)$ , double hashing uses the hash function

$$h(k,i) = (h_1(k) + i \cdot h_2(k)) \bmod m.$$

This method generally produces excellent results, but  $h_2(k)$  must be relatively prime to  $m$ . One way is to make  $m$  a power of 2 and design  $h_2(k)$  to produce only odd numbers.

October 3, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.22



## Analysis of open addressing

We make the assumption of **uniform hashing**:

- Each key is equally likely to have any one of the  $m!$  permutations as its probe sequence.

**Theorem.** Given an open-addressed hash table with load factor  $\alpha = n/m < 1$ , the expected number of probes in an unsuccessful search is at most  $1/(1-\alpha)$ .

October 3, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.23



## Proof of the theorem

### Proof.

- At least one probe is always necessary.
- With probability  $n/m$ , the first probe hits an occupied slot, and a second probe is necessary.
- With probability  $(n-1)/(m-1)$ , the second probe hits an occupied slot, and a third probe is necessary.
- With probability  $(n-2)/(m-2)$ , the third probe hits an occupied slot, etc.

Observe that  $\frac{n-i}{m-i} < \frac{n}{m} = \alpha$  for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ .

October 3, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.24



## Proof (continued)

Therefore, the expected number of probes is

$$\begin{aligned} & 1 + \frac{n}{m} \left( 1 + \frac{n-1}{m-1} \left( 1 + \frac{n-2}{m-2} \left( \dots \left( 1 + \frac{1}{m-n+1} \right) \dots \right) \right) \right) \\ & \leq 1 + \alpha(1 + \alpha(1 + \alpha(\dots(1 + \alpha)\dots))) \\ & \leq 1 + \alpha + \alpha^2 + \alpha^3 + \dots \\ & = \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \alpha^i \\ & = \frac{1}{1-\alpha}. \square \end{aligned}$$

*The textbook has a more rigorous proof and an analysis of successful searches.*

October 3, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.25



## Implications of the theorem

- If  $\alpha$  is constant, then accessing an open-addressed hash table takes constant time.
- If the table is half full, then the expected number of probes is  $1/(1-0.5) = 2$ .
- If the table is 90% full, then the expected number of probes is  $1/(1-0.9) = 10$ .

October 3, 2005

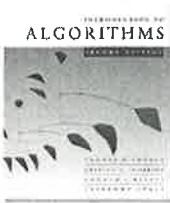
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.26



# Introduction to Algorithms

6.046J/18.401J



## LECTURE 8

### Hashing II

- Universal hashing
- Universality theorem
- Constructing a set of universal hash functions
- Perfect hashing

**Prof. Charles E. Leiserson**

October 5, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.1



## A weakness of hashing

**Problem:** For any hash function  $h$ , a set of keys exists that can cause the average access time of a hash table to skyrocket.

- An adversary can pick all keys from  $\{k \in U : h(k) = i\}$  for some slot  $i$ .

**IDEA:** Choose the hash function at random, independently of the keys.

- Even if an adversary can see your code, he or she cannot find a bad set of keys, since he or she doesn't know exactly which hash function will be chosen.

October 5, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

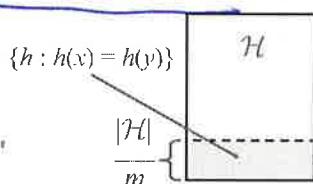
L7.2



## Universal hashing

**Definition.** Let  $U$  be a universe of keys, and let  $\mathcal{H}$  be a finite collection of hash functions, each mapping  $U$  to  $\{0, 1, \dots, m-1\}$ . We say  $\mathcal{H}$  is **universal** if for all  $x, y \in U$ , where  $x \neq y$ , we have  $|\{h \in \mathcal{H} : h(x) = h(y)\}| = |\mathcal{H}|/m$ .

That is, the chance of a collision between  $x$  and  $y$  is  $1/m$  if we choose  $h$  randomly from  $\mathcal{H}$ .



October 5, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.3



## Universality is good

**Theorem.** Let  $h$  be a hash function chosen (uniformly) at random from a universal set  $\mathcal{H}$  of hash functions. Suppose  $h$  is used to hash  $n$  arbitrary keys into the  $m$  slots of a table  $T$ . Then, for a given key  $x$ , we have

$$E[\#\text{collisions with } x] < n/m.$$

October 5, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.4



## Proof of theorem

*Proof.* Let  $C_x$  be the random variable denoting the total number of collisions of keys in  $T$  with  $x$ , and let

$$c_{xy} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } h(x) = h(y), \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Note:  $E[c_{xy}] = 1/m$  and  $C_x = \sum_{y \in T - \{x\}} c_{xy}$ .

October 5, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.5



## Proof (continued)

$$E[C_x] = E\left[\sum_{y \in T - \{x\}} c_{xy}\right]$$

- Take expectation of both sides.

October 5, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.6



## Proof (continued)

$$\begin{aligned} E[C_x] &= E\left[\sum_{y \in T - \{x\}} c_{xy}\right] \\ &= \sum_{y \in T - \{x\}} E[c_{xy}] \end{aligned}$$

- Take expectation of both sides.
- Linearity of expectation.

October 5, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.7



## Proof (continued)

$$\begin{aligned} E[C_x] &= E\left[\sum_{y \in T - \{x\}} c_{xy}\right] \\ &= \sum_{y \in T - \{x\}} E[c_{xy}] \\ &= \sum_{y \in T - \{x\}} 1/m \end{aligned}$$

- Take expectation of both sides.
- Linearity of expectation.
- $E[c_{xy}] = 1/m$ .

October 5, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.8



## Proof (continued)

$$\begin{aligned} E[C_x] &= E\left[\sum_{y \in T - \{x\}} c_{xy}\right] \\ &= \sum_{y \in T - \{x\}} E[c_{xy}] \\ &= \sum_{y \in T - \{x\}} 1/m \\ &= \frac{n-1}{m}. \quad \square \end{aligned}$$

- Take expectation of both sides.
- Linearity of expectation.
- $E[c_{xy}] = 1/m$ .
- Algebra.

October 5, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.9



## Constructing a set of universal hash functions

Let  $m$  be prime. Decompose key  $k$  into  $r+1$  digits, each with value in the set  $\{0, 1, \dots, m-1\}$ . That is, let  $k = \langle k_0, k_1, \dots, k_r \rangle$ , where  $0 \leq k_i < m$ .

### Randomized strategy:

Pick  $a = \langle a_0, a_1, \dots, a_r \rangle$  where each  $a_i$  is chosen randomly from  $\{0, 1, \dots, m-1\}$ .

Define  $h_a(k) = \left( \sum_{i=0}^r a_i k_i \right) \bmod m$ . **Dot product, modulo  $m$**

How big is  $\mathcal{H} = \{h_a\}$ ?  $|\mathcal{H}| = m^{r+1}$ . **REMEMBER THIS!**

October 5, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.10



## Universality of dot-product hash functions

**Theorem.** The set  $\mathcal{H} = \{h_a\}$  is universal.

*Proof.* Suppose that  $x = \langle x_0, x_1, \dots, x_r \rangle$  and  $y = \langle y_0, y_1, \dots, y_r \rangle$  be distinct keys. Thus, they differ in at least one digit position, wlog position 0.

For how many  $h_a \in \mathcal{H}$  do  $x$  and  $y$  collide?

We must have  $h_a(x) = h_a(y)$ , which implies that

$$\sum_{i=0}^r a_i x_i \equiv \sum_{i=0}^r a_i y_i \pmod{m}.$$

October 5, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.11



## Proof (continued)

Equivalently, we have

$$\sum_{i=0}^r a_i (x_i - y_i) \equiv 0 \pmod{m}$$

or

$$a_0(x_0 - y_0) + \sum_{i=1}^r a_i (x_i - y_i) \equiv 0 \pmod{m},$$

which implies that

$$a_0(x_0 - y_0) \equiv - \sum_{i=1}^r a_i (x_i - y_i) \pmod{m}.$$

October 5, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.12



## Fact from number theory

**Theorem.** Let  $m$  be prime. For any  $z \in \mathbb{Z}_m$  such that  $z \neq 0$ , there exists a unique  $z^{-1} \in \mathbb{Z}_m$  such that

$$z \cdot z^{-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{m}.$$

**Example:**  $m = 7$ .

|          |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| $z$      | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 |
| $z^{-1}$ | 1 | 4 | 5 | 2 | 3 | 6 |

October 5, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.13



## Back to the proof

We have

$$a_0(x_0 - y_0) \equiv -\sum_{i=1}^r a_i(x_i - y_i) \pmod{m},$$

and since  $x_0 \neq y_0$ , an inverse  $(x_0 - y_0)^{-1}$  must exist, which implies that

$$a_0 \equiv \left( -\sum_{i=1}^r a_i(x_i - y_i) \right) \cdot (x_0 - y_0)^{-1} \pmod{m}.$$

Thus, for any choices of  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_r$ , exactly one choice of  $a_0$  causes  $x$  and  $y$  to collide.

October 5, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.14



## Proof (completed)

**Q.** How many  $h$ 's cause  $x$  and  $y$  to collide?

**A.** There are  $m$  choices for each of  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_r$ , but once these are chosen, exactly one choice for  $a_0$  causes  $x$  and  $y$  to collide, namely

$$a_0 = \left( \left( -\sum_{i=1}^r a_i(x_i - y_i) \right) \cdot (x_0 - y_0)^{-1} \right) \pmod{m}.$$

Thus, the number of  $h$ 's that cause  $x$  and  $y$  to collide is  $m^r \cdot 1 = m^r = |\mathcal{H}|/m$ .  $\square$

October 5, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.15

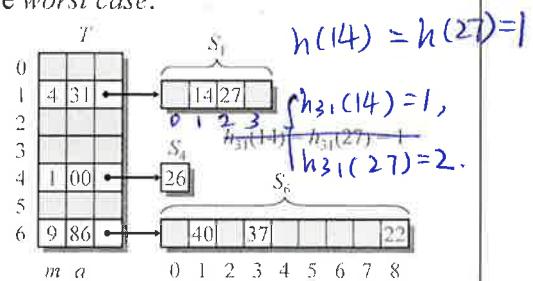


## Perfect hashing

Given a set of  $n$  keys, construct a static hash table of size  $m = O(n)$  such that SEARCH takes  $\Theta(1)$  time in the worst case.

**IDEA:** Two-level scheme with universal hashing at both levels.

No collisions at level 2!



October 5, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.16

If  $n_1$  items that hash to level 1 slot i, then use  $m_i = n_i^2$  slots in level 2 table  $S_i$ .



## Collisions at level 2

**Theorem.** Let  $\mathcal{H}$  be a class of universal hash functions for a table of size  $m = n^2$ . Then, if we use a random  $h \in \mathcal{H}$  to hash  $n$  keys into the table, the expected number of collisions is at most  $1/2$ .  
*Proof.* By the definition of universality, the probability that 2 given keys in the table collide under  $h$  is  $1/m = 1/n^2$ . Since there are  $\binom{n}{2}$  pairs of keys that can possibly collide, the expected number of collisions is

$$E[X] = \binom{n}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{n^2} = \frac{n(n-1)}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{n^2} < \frac{1}{2}. \quad \square$$

October 5, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.17



## No collisions at level 2

**Corollary.** The probability of no collisions is at least  $1/2$ .

*Proof.* *Markov's inequality* says that for any nonnegative random variable  $X$ , we have

$$\Pr\{X \geq t\} \leq E[X]/t.$$

Applying this inequality with  $t = 1$ , we find that the probability of 1 or more collisions is at most  $1/2$ .  $\square$

Thus, just by testing random hash functions in  $\mathcal{H}$ , we'll quickly find one that works.

October 5, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.18

## Analysis of storage

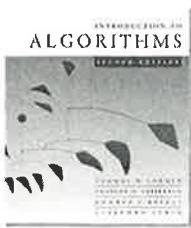
For the level-1 hash table  $T$ , choose  $m = n$ , and let  $n_i$  be random variable for the number of keys that hash to slot  $i$  in  $T$ . By using  $n_i^2$  slots for the level-2 hash table  $S_i$ , the expected total storage required for the two-level scheme is therefore

$$E\left[\sum_{i=0}^{m-1} \Theta(n_i^2)\right] = \Theta(n),$$

since the analysis is identical to the analysis from recitation of the expected running time of bucket sort. (For a probability bound, apply Markov.)

# Introduction to Algorithms

6.046J/18.401J



## LECTURE 9

### Randomly built binary search trees

- Expected node depth
- Analyzing height
  - Convexity lemma
  - Jensen's inequality
  - Exponential height
- Post mortem

Prof. Erik Demaine

October 17, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.1

17.1

October 17, 2005

## Binary-search-tree sort

$T \leftarrow \emptyset$   $\triangleright$  Create an empty BST

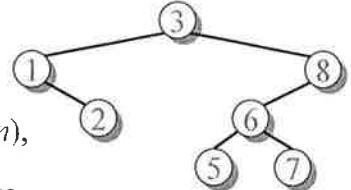
for  $i = 1$  to  $n$

do TREE-INSERT( $T, A[i]$ )

Perform an inorder tree walk of  $T$ .

Example:

$A = [3 1 8 2 6 7 5]$



Tree-walk time =  $O(n)$ ,  
but how long does it  
take to build the BST?

October 17, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

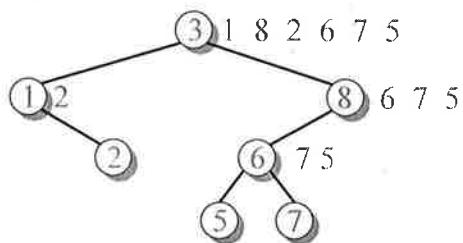
L7.2

17.2



## Analysis of BST sort

BST sort performs the same comparisons as quicksort, but in a different order!



The expected time to build the tree is asymptotically the same as the running time of quicksort.

October 17, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.3

17.3



## Node depth

The depth of a node = the number of comparisons made during TREE-INSERT. Assuming all input permutations are equally likely, we have

Average node depth

$$= \frac{1}{n} E \left[ \sum_{i=1}^n (\# \text{comparisons to insert node } i) \right]$$

$$= \frac{1}{n} O(n \lg n) \quad \text{(quicksort analysis)}$$

$$= O(\lg n) .$$

the same as BST

October 17, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.4

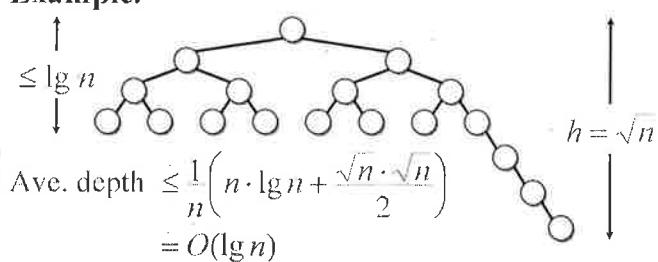
17.4



## Expected tree height

But, average node depth of a randomly built BST =  $O(\lg n)$  does not necessarily mean that its expected height is also  $O(\lg n)$  (although it is).

Example.



October 17, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.5

17.5



## Height of a randomly built binary search tree

Outline of the analysis:

- Prove **Jensen's inequality**, which says that  $f(E[X]) \leq E[f(X)]$  for any convex function  $f$  and random variable  $X$ .
- Analyze the **exponential height** of a randomly built BST on  $n$  nodes, which is the random variable  $Y_n = 2^{X_n}$ , where  $X_n$  is the random variable denoting the height of the BST.
- Prove that  $2^{E[X_n]} \leq E[2^{X_n}] = E[Y_n] = O(n^3)$ , and hence that  $E[X_n] = O(\lg n)$ .

October 17, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.6

17.6

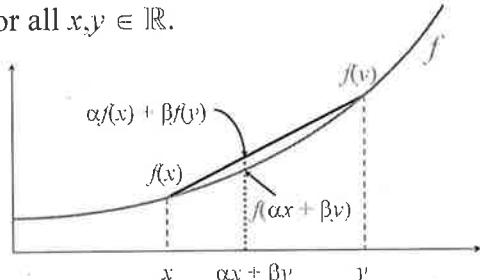


## Convex functions

A function  $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is *convex* if for all  $\alpha, \beta \geq 0$  such that  $\alpha + \beta = 1$ , we have

$$f(\alpha x + \beta y) \leq \alpha f(x) + \beta f(y)$$

for all  $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$ .



October 17, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.7

ALGORITHMS

## Convexity lemma

**Lemma.** Let  $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a convex function, and let  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$  be nonnegative real numbers such that  $\sum_k \alpha_k = 1$ . Then, for any real numbers  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$ , we have

$$f\left(\sum_{k=1}^n \alpha_k x_k\right) \leq \sum_{k=1}^n \alpha_k f(x_k).$$

*Proof.* By induction on  $n$ . For  $n = 1$ , we have  $\alpha_1 = 1$ , and hence  $f(\alpha_1 x_1) \leq \alpha_1 f(x_1)$  trivially.

October 17, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.8



## Proof (continued)

Inductive step:

$$f\left(\sum_{k=1}^n \alpha_k x_k\right) = f\left(\alpha_n x_n + (1 - \alpha_n) \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} \frac{\alpha_k}{1 - \alpha_n} x_k\right)$$

Algebra.

October 17, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.9



## Proof (continued)

Inductive step:

$$\begin{aligned} f\left(\sum_{k=1}^n \alpha_k x_k\right) &= f\left(\alpha_n x_n + (1 - \alpha_n) \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} \frac{\alpha_k}{1 - \alpha_n} x_k\right) \\ &\leq \alpha_n f(x_n) + (1 - \alpha_n) f\left(\sum_{k=1}^{n-1} \frac{\alpha_k}{1 - \alpha_n} x_k\right) \end{aligned}$$

Convexity.

October 17, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.10



## Proof (continued)

Inductive step:

$$\begin{aligned} f\left(\sum_{k=1}^n \alpha_k x_k\right) &= f\left(\alpha_n x_n + (1 - \alpha_n) \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} \frac{\alpha_k}{1 - \alpha_n} x_k\right) \\ &\leq \alpha_n f(x_n) + (1 - \alpha_n) f\left(\sum_{k=1}^{n-1} \frac{\alpha_k}{1 - \alpha_n} x_k\right) \\ &\leq \alpha_n f(x_n) + (1 - \alpha_n) \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} \frac{\alpha_k}{1 - \alpha_n} f(x_k) \end{aligned}$$

Induction.

October 17, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.11



## Proof (continued)

Inductive step:

$$\begin{aligned} f\left(\sum_{k=1}^n \alpha_k x_k\right) &= f\left(\alpha_n x_n + (1 - \alpha_n) \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} \frac{\alpha_k}{1 - \alpha_n} x_k\right) \\ &\leq \alpha_n f(x_n) + (1 - \alpha_n) f\left(\sum_{k=1}^{n-1} \frac{\alpha_k}{1 - \alpha_n} x_k\right) \\ &\leq \alpha_n f(x_n) + (1 - \alpha_n) \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} \frac{\alpha_k}{1 - \alpha_n} f(x_k) \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^n \alpha_k f(x_k). \quad \square \quad \text{Algebra.} \end{aligned}$$

October 17, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.12

## Convexity lemma: infinite case

**Lemma.** Let  $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a convex function, and let  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots$  be nonnegative real numbers such that  $\sum_k \alpha_k = 1$ . Then, for any real numbers  $x_1, x_2, \dots$ , we have

$$f\left(\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \alpha_k x_k\right) \leq \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \alpha_k f(x_k),$$

assuming that these summations exist.

## Convexity lemma: infinite case

*Proof.* By the convexity lemma, for any  $n \geq 1$ ,

$$f\left(\sum_{k=1}^n \frac{\alpha_k}{\sum_{i=1}^n \alpha_i} x_k\right) \leq \sum_{k=1}^n \frac{\alpha_k}{\sum_{i=1}^n \alpha_i} f(x_k).$$

Taking the limit of both sides  
(and because the inequality is not strict):

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f\left(\underbrace{\frac{1}{\sum_{i=1}^n \alpha_i} \sum_{k=1}^n \alpha_k x_k}_{\rightarrow 1}\right) \leq \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \underbrace{\frac{1}{\sum_{i=1}^n \alpha_i} \sum_{k=1}^n \alpha_k f(x_k)}_{\rightarrow \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \alpha_k f(x_k)} \quad \square$$

## Jensen's inequality

**Lemma.** Let  $f$  be a convex function, and let  $X$  be a random variable. Then,  $f(E[X]) \leq E[f(X)]$ .

*Proof.*

$$\begin{aligned} f(E[X]) &= f\left(\sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} k \cdot \Pr\{X = k\}\right) \\ &\leq \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} f(k) \cdot \Pr\{X = k\} \end{aligned}$$

Convexity lemma (infinite case).

## Convexity lemma: infinite case

*Proof.* By the convexity lemma, for any  $n \geq 1$ ,

$$f\left(\sum_{k=1}^n \frac{\alpha_k}{\sum_{i=1}^n \alpha_i} x_k\right) \leq \sum_{k=1}^n \frac{\alpha_k}{\sum_{i=1}^n \alpha_i} f(x_k),$$

## Jensen's inequality

**Lemma.** Let  $f$  be a convex function, and let  $X$  be a random variable. Then,  $f(E[X]) \leq E[f(X)]$ .

*Proof.*

$$f(E[X]) = f\left(\sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} k \cdot \Pr\{X = k\}\right)$$

Definition of expectation.

## Jensen's inequality

**Lemma.** Let  $f$  be a convex function, and let  $X$  be a random variable. Then,  $f(E[X]) \leq E[f(X)]$ .

*Proof.*

$$\begin{aligned} f(E[X]) &= f\left(\sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} k \cdot \Pr\{X = k\}\right) \\ &\leq \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} f(k) \cdot \Pr\{X = k\} \\ &= E[f(X)]. \quad \square \end{aligned}$$

Tricky step, but true—think about it.



## Analysis of BST height

Let  $X_n$  be the random variable denoting the height of a randomly built binary search tree on  $n$  nodes, and let  $Y_n = 2^{X_n}$  be its exponential height.

If the root of the tree has rank  $k$ , then

$$X_n = 1 + \max\{X_{k-1}, X_{n-k}\},$$

since each of the left and right subtrees of the root are randomly built. Hence, we have

$$Y_n = 2 \cdot \max\{Y_{k-1}, Y_{n-k}\}.$$

October 17, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.19



## Analysis (continued)

Define the indicator random variable  $Z_{nk}$  as

$$Z_{nk} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if the root has rank } k, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Thus,  $\Pr\{Z_{nk} = 1\} = E[Z_{nk}] = 1/n$ , and

$$Y_n = \sum_{k=1}^n Z_{nk} (2 \cdot \max\{Y_{k-1}, Y_{n-k}\}).$$

October 17, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.20



## Exponential height recurrence

$$E[Y_n] = E\left[\sum_{k=1}^n Z_{nk} (2 \cdot \max\{Y_{k-1}, Y_{n-k}\})\right]$$

Take expectation of both sides.

October 17, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.21



## Exponential height recurrence

$$\begin{aligned} E[Y_n] &= E\left[\sum_{k=1}^n Z_{nk} (2 \cdot \max\{Y_{k-1}, Y_{n-k}\})\right] \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^n E[Z_{nk} (2 \cdot \max\{Y_{k-1}, Y_{n-k}\})] \end{aligned}$$

Linearity of expectation.

October 17, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.22



## Exponential height recurrence

$$\begin{aligned} E[Y_n] &= E\left[\sum_{k=1}^n Z_{nk} (2 \cdot \max\{Y_{k-1}, Y_{n-k}\})\right] \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^n E[Z_{nk} (2 \cdot \max\{Y_{k-1}, Y_{n-k}\})] \\ &= 2 \sum_{k=1}^n E[Z_{nk}] \cdot E[\max\{Y_{k-1}, Y_{n-k}\}] \end{aligned}$$

Independence of the rank of the root from the ranks of subtree roots.

October 17, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.23



## Exponential height recurrence

$$\begin{aligned} E[Y_n] &= E\left[\sum_{k=1}^n Z_{nk} (2 \cdot \max\{Y_{k-1}, Y_{n-k}\})\right] \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^n E[Z_{nk} (2 \cdot \max\{Y_{k-1}, Y_{n-k}\})] \\ &= 2 \sum_{k=1}^n E[Z_{nk}] \cdot E[\max\{Y_{k-1}, Y_{n-k}\}] \\ &\leq 2 \sum_{k=1}^n E[Y_{k-1} + Y_{n-k}] \end{aligned}$$

The max of two nonnegative numbers is at most their sum, and  $E[Z_{nk}] = 1/n$ .

October 17, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.24



## Exponential height recurrence

$$\begin{aligned}
 E[Y_n] &= E\left[\sum_{k=1}^n Z_{nk} (2 \cdot \max\{Y_{k-1}, Y_{n-k}\})\right] \\
 &= \sum_{k=1}^n E[Z_{nk} (2 \cdot \max\{Y_{k-1}, Y_{n-k}\})] \\
 &= 2 \sum_{k=1}^n E[Z_{nk}] \cdot E[\max\{Y_{k-1}, Y_{n-k}\}] \\
 &\leq 2 \sum_{k=1}^n E[Y_{k-1} + Y_{n-k}] \\
 &= \frac{4}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} E[Y_k]
 \end{aligned}$$

Each term appears twice, and reindex.

October 17, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.25



## Solving the recurrence

Use substitution to show that  $E[Y_n] \leq cn^3$  for some positive constant  $c$ , which we can pick sufficiently large to handle the initial conditions.

$$E[Y_n] = \frac{4}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} E[Y_k]$$

October 17, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.26



## Solving the recurrence

Use substitution to show that  $E[Y_n] \leq cn^3$  for some positive constant  $c$ , which we can pick sufficiently large to handle the initial conditions.

$$\begin{aligned}
 E[Y_n] &= \frac{4}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} E[Y_k] \\
 &\leq \frac{4}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} ck^3
 \end{aligned}$$

Substitution.

October 17, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.27



## Solving the recurrence

Use substitution to show that  $E[Y_n] \leq cn^3$  for some positive constant  $c$ , which we can pick sufficiently large to handle the initial conditions.

$$\begin{aligned}
 E[Y_n] &= \frac{4}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} E[Y_k] \\
 &\leq \frac{4}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} ck^3 \\
 &\leq \frac{4c}{n} \int_0^n x^3 dx
 \end{aligned}$$

Integral method.

October 17, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.28



## Solving the recurrence

Use substitution to show that  $E[Y_n] \leq cn^3$  for some positive constant  $c$ , which we can pick sufficiently large to handle the initial conditions.

$$\begin{aligned}
 E[Y_n] &= \frac{4}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} E[Y_k] \\
 &\leq \frac{4}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} ck^3 \\
 &\leq \frac{4c}{n} \int_0^n x^3 dx \\
 &= \frac{4c}{n} \left(\frac{n^4}{4}\right)
 \end{aligned}$$

Solve the integral.

October 17, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.29



## Solving the recurrence

Use substitution to show that  $E[Y_n] \leq cn^3$  for some positive constant  $c$ , which we can pick sufficiently large to handle the initial conditions.

$$\begin{aligned}
 E[Y_n] &= \frac{4}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} E[Y_k] \\
 &\leq \frac{4}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} ck^3 \\
 &\leq \frac{4c}{n} \int_0^n x^3 dx \\
 &= \frac{4c}{n} \left(\frac{n^4}{4}\right) \\
 &= cn^3. \quad \text{Algebra.}
 \end{aligned}$$

October 17, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.30



## The grand finale

Putting it all together, we have

$$2^{E[X_n]} \leq E[2^{X_n}]$$

Jensen's inequality, since  
 $f(x) = 2^x$  is convex.

October 17, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.31



## The grand finale

Putting it all together, we have

$$\begin{aligned} 2^{E[X_n]} &\leq E[2^{X_n}] \\ &= E[Y_n] \end{aligned}$$

Definition.

October 17, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.32



## The grand finale

Putting it all together, we have

$$\begin{aligned} 2^{E[X_n]} &\leq E[2^{X_n}] \\ &= E[Y_n] \\ &\leq cn^3. \end{aligned}$$

What we just showed.

October 17, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.33



## The grand finale

Putting it all together, we have

$$\begin{aligned} 2^{E[X_n]} &\leq E[2^{X_n}] \\ &= E[Y_n] \\ &\leq cn^3. \end{aligned}$$

Taking the  $\lg$  of both sides yields

$$E[X_n] \leq 3 \lg n + O(1).$$

October 17, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.34



## Post mortem

- Q. Does the analysis have to be this hard?
- Q. Why bother with analyzing exponential height?
- Q. Why not just develop the recurrence on  

$$X_n = 1 + \max\{X_{k-1}, X_{n-k}\}$$
  
 directly?

October 17, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.35



## Post mortem (continued)

- A. The inequality

$$\max\{a, b\} \leq a + b.$$

provides a poor upper bound, since the RHS approaches the LHS slowly as  $|a - b|$  increases.  
 The bound

$$\max\{2^a, 2^b\} \leq 2^a + 2^b$$

allows the RHS to approach the LHS far more quickly as  $|a - b|$  increases. By using the convexity of  $f(x) = 2^x$  via Jensen's inequality, we can manipulate the sum of exponentials, resulting in a tight analysis.

October 17, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.36



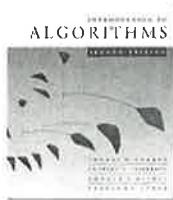
## Thought exercises

- See what happens when you try to do the analysis on  $X_n$  directly.
- Try to understand better why the proof uses an exponential. Will a quadratic do?
- See if you can find a simpler argument.  
(This argument is a little simpler than the one in the book—I hope it's correct!)



# Introduction to Algorithms

6.046J/18.401J



## LECTURE 10 Balanced Search Trees

- Red-black trees
- Height of a red-black tree
- Rotations
- Insertion

Prof. Erik Demaine

October 19, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.1

## Balanced search trees

**Balanced search tree:** A search-tree data structure for which a height of  $O(\lg n)$  is guaranteed when implementing a dynamic set of  $n$  items.

- AVL trees
- 2-3 trees
- 2-3-4 trees
- B-trees
- Red-black trees

Examples:

October 19, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.2



## Red-black trees

This data structure requires an extra one-bit color field in each node.



**Red-black properties:**

1. Every node is either red or black.
2. The root and leaves (NIL's) are black.
3. If a node is red, then its parent is black.
4. All simple paths from any node  $x$  to a descendant leaf have the same number of black nodes =  $\text{black-height}(x)$ .

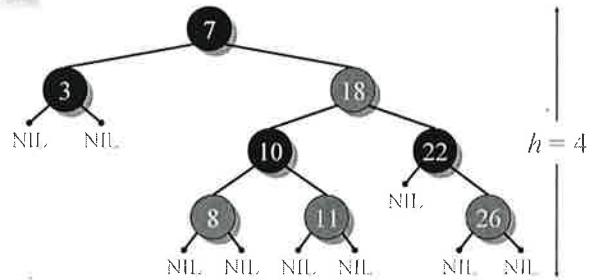
October 19, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.3



## Example of a red-black tree



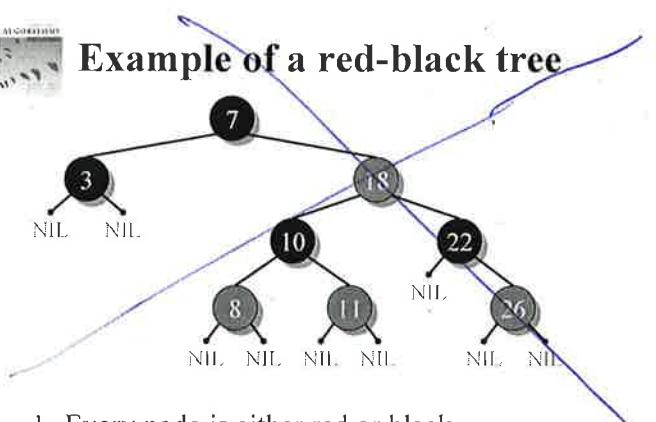
October 19, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.4



## Example of a red-black tree



1. Every node is either red or black.

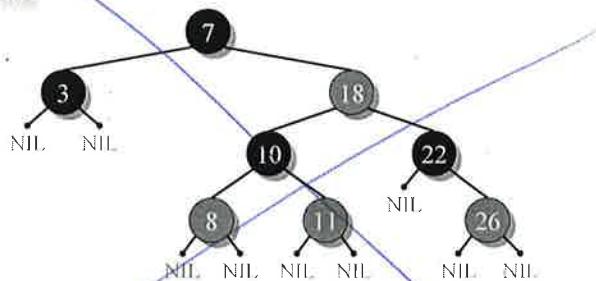
October 19, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.5



## Example of a red-black tree



2. The root and leaves (NIL's) are black.

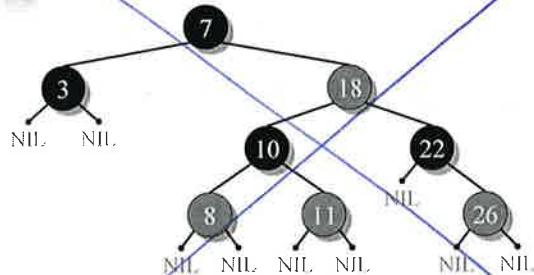
October 19, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.6



## Example of a red-black tree



3. If a node is red, then its parent is black.

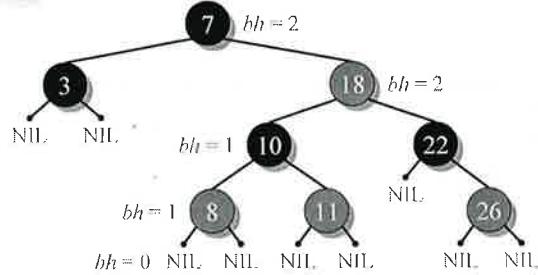
October 19, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.7



## Example of a red-black tree



4. All simple paths from any node  $x$  to a descendant leaf have the same number of black nodes =  $\text{black-height}(x)$ .

October 19, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.8



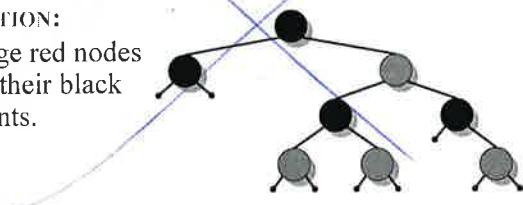
## Height of a red-black tree

**Theorem.** A red-black tree with  $n$  keys has height  $h \leq 2 \lg(n + 1)$ .

*Proof.* (The book uses induction. Read carefully.)

### INTUITION:

- Merge red nodes into their black parents.



October 19, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.9



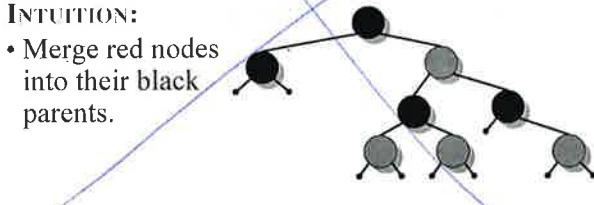
## Height of a red-black tree

**Theorem.** A red-black tree with  $n$  keys has height  $h \leq 2 \lg(n + 1)$ .

*Proof.* (The book uses induction. Read carefully.)

### INTUITION:

- Merge red nodes into their black parents.



October 19, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.10



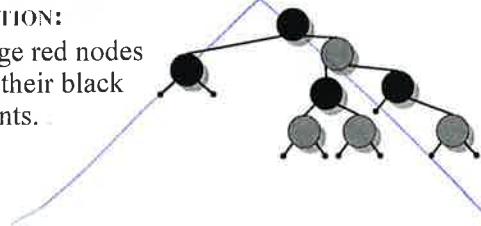
## Height of a red-black tree

**Theorem.** A red-black tree with  $n$  keys has height  $h \leq 2 \lg(n + 1)$ .

*Proof.* (The book uses induction. Read carefully.)

### INTUITION:

- Merge red nodes into their black parents.



October 19, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.11



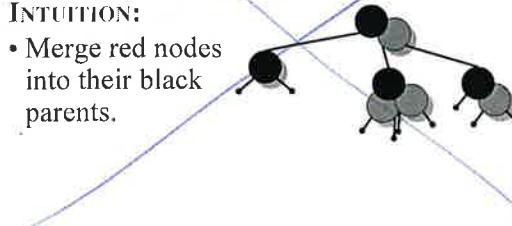
## Height of a red-black tree

**Theorem.** A red-black tree with  $n$  keys has height  $h \leq 2 \lg(n + 1)$ .

*Proof.* (The book uses induction. Read carefully.)

### INTUITION:

- Merge red nodes into their black parents.



October 19, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.12



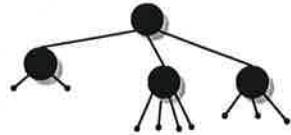
## Height of a red-black tree

**Theorem.** A red-black tree with  $n$  keys has height  $h \leq 2 \lg(n+1)$ .

*Proof.* (The book uses induction. Read carefully.)

### INTUITION:

- Merge red nodes into their black parents.



October 19, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.13



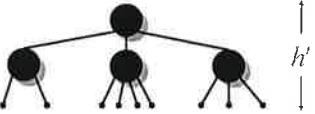
## Height of a red-black tree

**Theorem.** A red-black tree with  $n$  keys has height  $h \leq 2 \lg(n+1)$ .

*Proof.* (The book uses induction. Read carefully.)

### INTUITION:

- Merge red nodes into their black parents.
- This process produces a tree in which each node has 2, 3, or 4 children.
- The 2-3-4 tree has uniform depth  $h'$  of leaves.



October 19, 2005

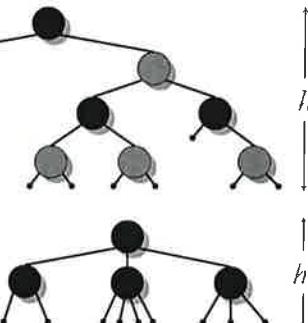
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.14



## Proof (continued)

- We have  $h' \geq h/2$ , since at most half the leaves on any path are red.
- The number of leaves in each tree is  $n+1$   
 $\Rightarrow n+1 \geq 2^{h'} \leq 4^{h'}$   
 $\Rightarrow \lg(n+1) \geq h' \geq h/2$   
 $\Rightarrow h \leq 2 \lg(n+1)$ .  $\square$



October 19, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.15



## Query operations

**Corollary.** The queries SEARCH, MIN, MAX, SUCCESSOR, and PREDECESSOR all run in  $O(\lg n)$  time on a red-black tree with  $n$  nodes.

October 19, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.16



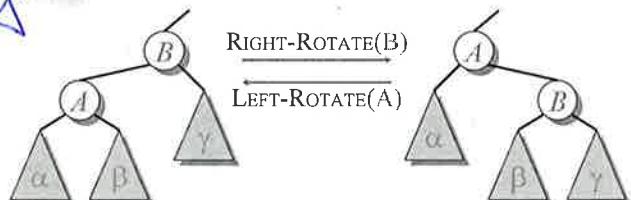
## Modifying operations

The operations INSERT and DELETE cause modifications to the red-black tree:

- ① the operation itself,
- ② color changes,
- ③ restructuring the links of the tree via "rotations".



## Rotations



Rotations maintain the inorder ordering of keys:

$$\alpha \in \alpha, b \in \beta, c \in \gamma \Rightarrow a \leq A \leq b \leq B \leq c.$$

A rotation can be performed in  $O(1)$  time.

October 19, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.17

October 19, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

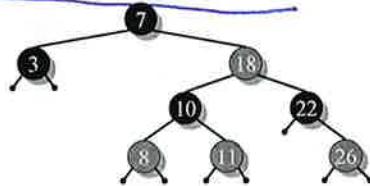
L7.18



## Insertion into a red-black tree

**IDEA:** Insert  $x$  in tree. Color  $x$  red. Only red-black property 3 might be violated. Move the violation up the tree by recoloring until it can be fixed with rotations and recoloring.

**Example:**



October 19, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.19

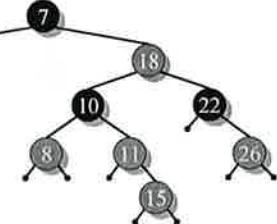


## Insertion into a red-black tree

**IDEA:** Insert  $x$  in tree. Color  $x$  red. Only red-black property 3 might be violated. Move the violation up the tree by recoloring until it can be fixed with rotations and recoloring.

**Example:**

- Insert  $x = 15$ .
- Recolor, moving the violation up the tree.



October 19, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.20

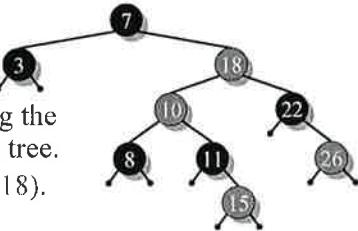


## Insertion into a red-black tree

**IDEA:** Insert  $x$  in tree. Color  $x$  red. Only red-black property 3 might be violated. Move the violation up the tree by recoloring until it can be fixed with rotations and recoloring.

**Example:**

- Insert  $x = 15$ .
- Recolor, moving the violation up the tree.
- RIGHT-ROTATE(18).



October 19, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.21

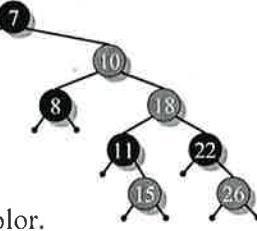


## Insertion into a red-black tree

**IDEA:** Insert  $x$  in tree. Color  $x$  red. Only red-black property 3 might be violated. Move the violation up the tree by recoloring until it can be fixed with rotations and recoloring.

**Example:**

- Insert  $x = 15$ .
- Recolor, moving the violation up the tree.
- RIGHT-ROTATE(18).
- LEFT-ROTATE(7) and recolor.



October 19, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.22

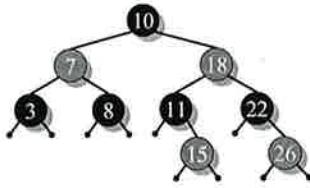


## Insertion into a red-black tree

**IDEA:** Insert  $x$  in tree. Color  $x$  red. Only red-black property 3 might be violated. Move the violation up the tree by recoloring until it can be fixed with rotations and recoloring.

**Example:**

- Insert  $x = 15$ .
- Recolor, moving the violation up the tree.
- RIGHT-ROTATE(18).
- LEFT-ROTATE(7) and recolor.



October 19, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.23



## Pseudocode

```

RB-INSERT(T, x)
 TREE-INSERT(T, x)
 $color[x] \leftarrow \text{RED}$ \triangleright only RB property 3 can be violated
 while $x \neq \text{root}[T]$ and $color[p[x]] = \text{RED}$
 do if $p[x] = \text{left}[p[p[x]]]$
 then $y \leftarrow \text{right}[p[p[x]]]$ \triangleright $y = \text{aunt/uncle of } x$
 if $color[y] = \text{RED}$
 then $\langle \text{Case 1} \rangle$
 else if $x = \text{right}[p[x]]$
 then $\langle \text{Case 2} \rangle$ \triangleright Case 2 falls into Case 3
 $\langle \text{Case 3} \rangle$
 else $\langle \text{then} \rangle$ clause with "left" and "right" swapped)
 $color[\text{root}[T]] \leftarrow \text{BLACK}$

```

October 19, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.24



## Graphical notation

Let  $\triangle$  denote a subtree with a black root.

All  $\triangle$ 's have the same black-height.

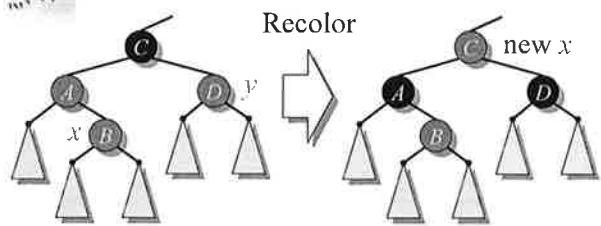
October 19, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.25



### Case 1



(Or, children of  
A are swapped.)

Push C's black onto  
A and D, and recurse,  
since C's parent may  
be red.

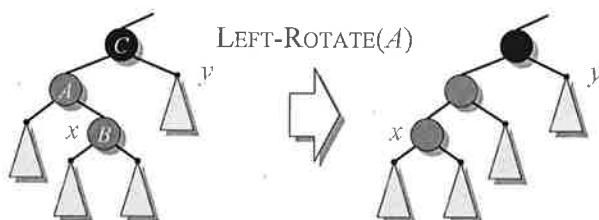
October 19, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.26



### Case 2



Transform to Case 3.

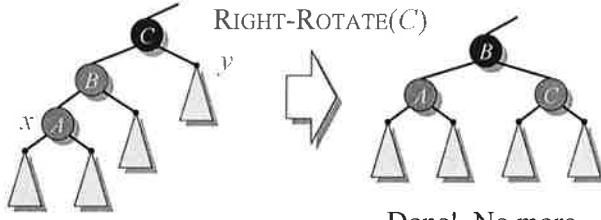
October 19, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.27



### Case 3



Done! No more  
violations of RB  
property 3 are  
possible.

October 19, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.28



## Analysis

- Go up the tree performing Case 1, which only recolors nodes.
- If Case 2 or Case 3 occurs, perform 1 or 2 rotations, and terminate.

**Running time:**  $O(\lg n)$  with  $O(1)$  rotations.

**RB-DELETE** — same asymptotic running time and number of rotations as RB-INSERT (see textbook).

October 19, 2005

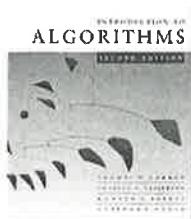
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L7.29



# Introduction to Algorithms

6.046J/18.401J



## LECTURE 11 Augmenting Data Structures

- Dynamic order statistics
- Methodology
- Interval trees

Prof. Charles E. Leiserson

October 24, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.1



## Dynamic order statistics

OS-SELECT( $i, S$ ): returns the  $i$ th smallest element in the dynamic set  $S$ .

OS-RANK( $x, S$ ): returns the rank of  $x \in S$  in the sorted order of  $S$ 's elements.

**IDEA:** Use a red-black tree for the set  $S$ , but keep subtree sizes in the nodes.

Notation for nodes:



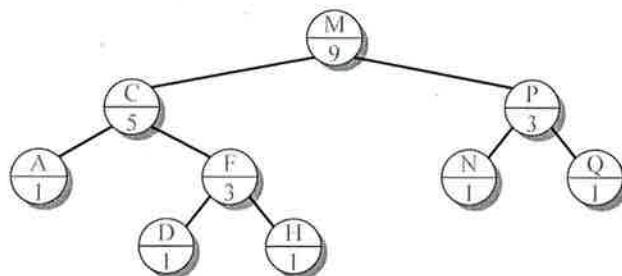
October 24, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.2



## Example of an OS-tree



$$\text{size}[x] = \text{size}[\text{left}[x]] + \text{size}[\text{right}[x]] + 1$$

October 24, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.3



## Selection

**Implementation trick:** Use a sentinel (dummy record) for NIL such that size[NIL] = 0. ↑ 12.

OS-SELECT( $x, i$ )  $\triangleright$   $i$ th smallest element in the subtree rooted at  $x$   
 $k \leftarrow \text{size}[\text{left}[x]] + 1 \quad \triangleright k = \text{rank}(x)$   
**if**  $i = k$  **then return**  $x$   
**if**  $i < k$  **then return** OS-SELECT( $\text{left}[x], i$ )  
**else return** OS-SELECT( $\text{right}[x], i - k$ )

(OS-RANK is in the textbook.)

October 24, 2005

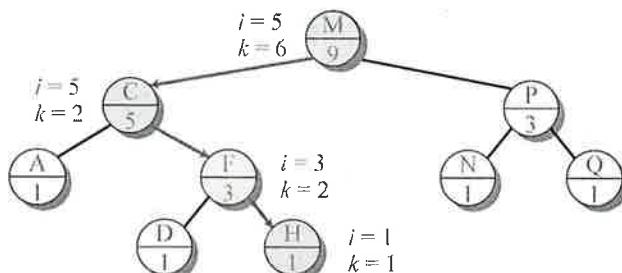
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.4



## Example

OS-SELECT( $\text{root}, 5$ )



Running time =  $O(h) = O(\lg n)$  for red-black trees.

October 24, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.5



## Data structure maintenance

Q. Why not keep the ranks themselves in the nodes instead of subtree sizes?

A. They are hard to maintain when the red-black tree is modified.

**Modifying operations:** INSERT and DELETE.

**Strategy:** Update subtree sizes when inserting or deleting.

October 24, 2005

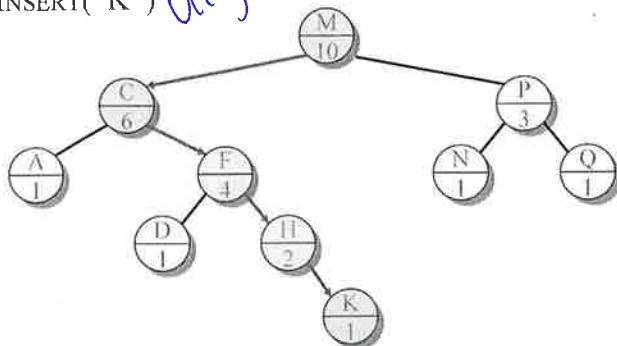
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.6



## Example of insertion

$\text{INSERT}(\text{"K"})$  *( $\text{Alg}^n$ )*



October 24, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.7



## Handling rebalancing

Don't forget that RB-INSERT and RB-DELETE may also need to modify the red-black tree in order to maintain balance.

- Recolorings: no effect on subtree sizes.
- Rotations: fix up subtree sizes in  $O(1)$  time.

Example:



$\therefore \text{RB-INSERT and RB-DELETE still run in } O(\lg n) \text{ time.}$

October 24, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.8



## Data-structure augmentation

**Methodology:** (e.g., order-statistics trees)

1. Choose an underlying data structure (*red-black trees*).
2. Determine additional information to be stored in the data structure (*subtree sizes*). *( $\text{Alg}^n$ )*
3. Verify that this information can be maintained for modifying operations (*RB-INSERT, RB-DELETE — don't forget rotations*).
4. Develop new dynamic-set operations that use the information (*OS-SELECT and OS-RANK*).

These steps are guidelines, not rigid rules.

October 24, 2005

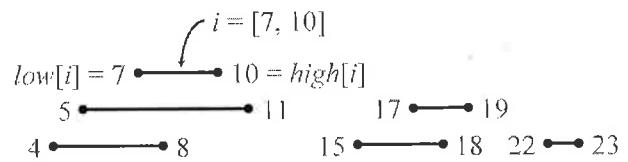
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.9



## Interval trees

**Goal:** To maintain a dynamic set of intervals, such as time intervals.



**Query:** For a given query interval  $i$ , find an interval in the set that overlaps  $i$ .

October 24, 2005

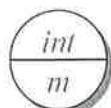
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.10



## Following the methodology

1. Choose an underlying data structure.
  - Red-black tree keyed on low (left) endpoint.
2. Determine additional information to be stored in the data structure.
  - Store in each node  $x$  the largest value  $m[x]$  in the subtree rooted at  $x$ , as well as the interval  $\text{int}[x]$  corresponding to the key.



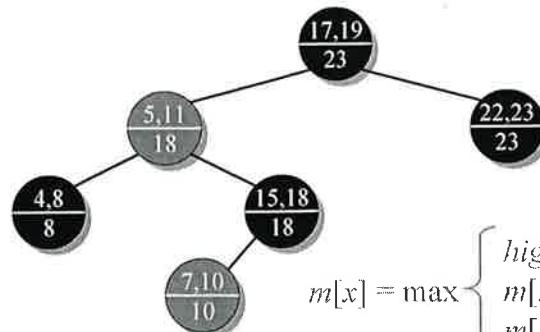
October 24, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.11



## Example interval tree



$$m[x] = \max \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{high[int[x]]} \\ m[\text{left}[x]] \\ m[\text{right}[x]] \end{array} \right\}$$

October 24, 2005

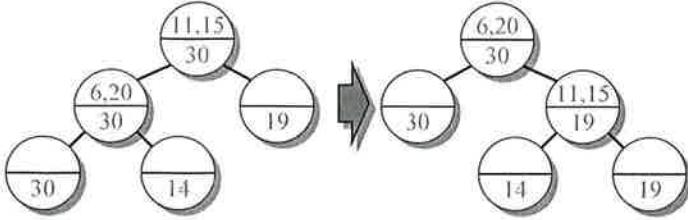
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.12

## Modifying operations

3. Verify that this information can be maintained for modifying operations.

- INSERT: Fix m's on the way down.
- Rotations — Fixup =  $O(1)$  time per rotation:



Total INSERT time =  $O(\lg n)$ ; DELETE similar.

October 24, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.13

## New operations

4. Develop new dynamic-set operations that use the information.

INTERVAL-SEARCH( $i$ )

$x \leftarrow \text{root}$

**while**  $x \neq \text{NIL}$ , and ( $\text{low}[i] > \text{high}[\text{int}[x]]$

or  $\text{low}[\text{int}[x]] > \text{high}[i]$ ) *y test*

**do**  $\triangleright i$  and  $\text{int}[x]$  don't overlap

**if**  $\text{left}[x] \neq \text{NIL}$ , and  $\text{low}[i] \leq \text{m}[\text{left}[x]]$

**then**  $x \leftarrow \text{left}[x]$

**else**  $x \leftarrow \text{right}[x]$

**return**  $x$

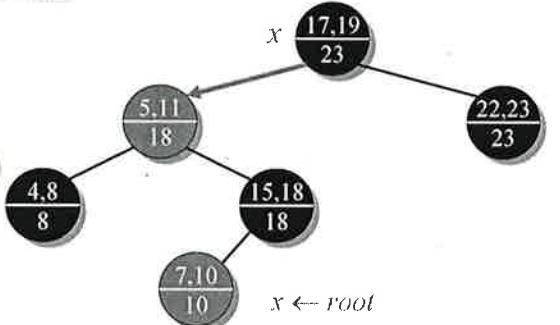
October 24, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.14



### Example 1: INTERVAL-SEARCH([14,16])



$x \leftarrow \text{root}$

[14,16] and [17,19] don't overlap

$14 \leq 18 \Rightarrow x \leftarrow \text{left}[x]$

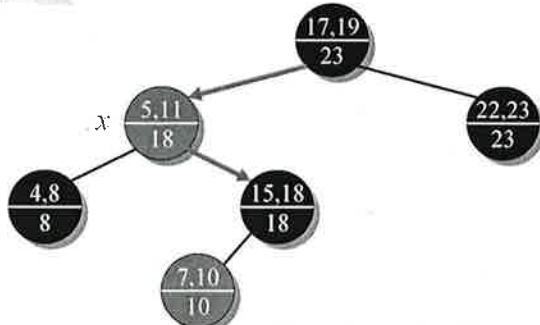
October 24, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.15



### Example 1: INTERVAL-SEARCH([14,16])



[14,16] and [5,11] don't overlap

$14 > 8 \Rightarrow x \leftarrow \text{right}[x]$

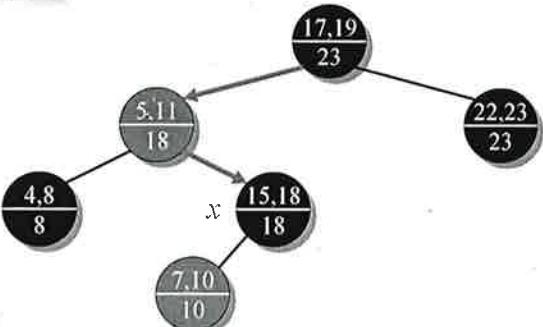
October 24, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.16



### Example 1: INTERVAL-SEARCH([14,16])



[14,16] and [15,18] overlap

**return** [15,18]

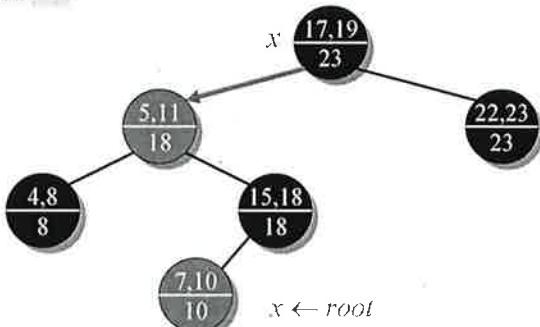
October 24, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.17



### Example 2: INTERVAL-SEARCH([12,14])



[12,14] and [17,19] don't overlap

$12 \leq 18 \Rightarrow x \leftarrow \text{left}[x]$

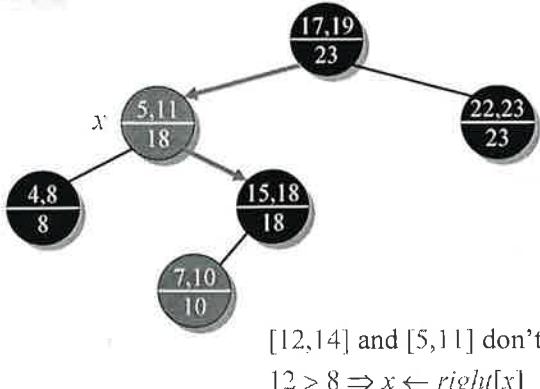
October 24, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.18



## Example 2: INTERVAL-SEARCH([12,14])



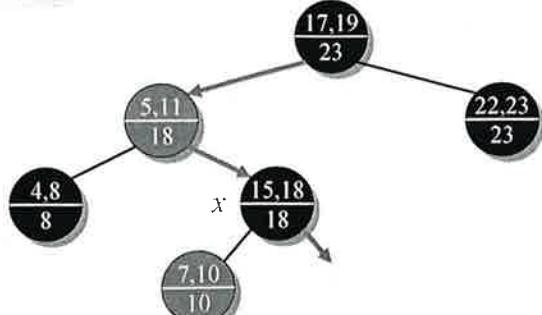
October 24, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.19



## Example 2: INTERVAL-SEARCH([12,14])



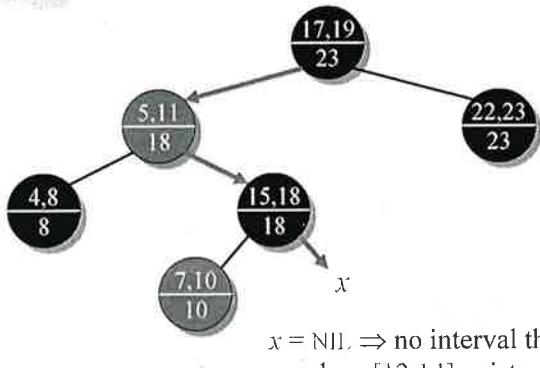
October 24, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.20



## Example 2: INTERVAL-SEARCH([12,14])



October 24, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.21



## Analysis

Time =  $O(h) = O(\lg n)$ , since INTERVAL-SEARCH does constant work at each level as it follows a simple path down the tree.

List all overlapping intervals:

- Search, list, delete, repeat.
- Insert them all again at the end.

Time =  $O(k \lg n)$ , where  $k$  is the total number of overlapping intervals.

This is an output-sensitive bound.

Best algorithm to date:  $O(k + \lg n)$ .

October 24, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.22



## Correctness

*logics are today*

**Theorem.** Let  $L$  be the set of intervals in the left subtree of node  $x$ , and let  $R$  be the set of intervals in  $x$ 's right subtree.

If the search goes right, then

$$\{ i' \in L : i' \text{ overlaps } i \} = \emptyset.$$

- If the search goes left, then

*case 1*     $\{ i' \in L : i' \text{ overlaps } i \} = \emptyset$   
*case 2*     $\Rightarrow \{ i' \in R : i' \text{ overlaps } i \} = \emptyset.$

In other words, it's always safe to take only 1 of the 2 children: we'll either find something, or nothing was to be found.

October 24, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

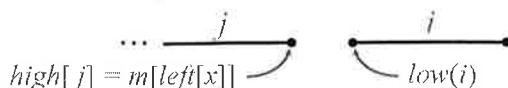
L11.23



## Correctness proof

*Proof.* Suppose first that the search goes right.

- If  $\text{left}[x] = \text{NIL}$ , then we're done, since  $L = \emptyset$ .
- Otherwise, the code dictates that we must have  $\text{low}[i] \geq m[\text{left}[x]]$ . The value  $m[\text{left}[x]]$  corresponds to the high endpoint of some interval  $j \in L$ , and no other interval in  $L$  can have a larger high endpoint than  $\text{high}[j]$ .



- Therefore,  $\{ i' \in L : i' \text{ overlaps } i \} = \emptyset$ .

October 24, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

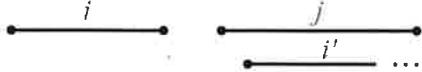
L11.24



## Proof (continued)

Suppose that the search goes left, and assume that  
 $\{i' \in L : i' \text{ overlaps } i\} = \emptyset$ .

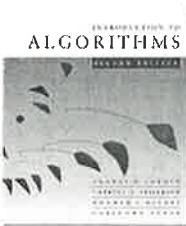
- Then, the code dictates that  $low[i] \leq m[\text{left}[x]] = high[j]$  for some  $j \in L$ .
- Since  $j \in L$ , it does not overlap  $i$ , and hence  $high[i] < low[j]$ .
- But, the binary-search-tree property implies that for all  $i' \in R$ , we have  $low[j] \leq low[i']$ .
- But then  $\{i' \in R : i' \text{ overlaps } i\} = \emptyset$ .  $\square$





# Introduction to Algorithms

6.046J/18.401J



## LECTURE 12

### Skip Lists

- Data structure
- Randomized insertion
- With-high-probability bound
- Analysis
- Coin flipping

Prof. Erik D. Demaine

October 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.1

Expected  $O(\lg n)$ .



## Skip lists

- Simple randomized dynamic search structure
  - Invented by William Pugh in 1989
  - Easy to implement
- Maintains a dynamic set of  $n$  elements in  $O(\lg n)$  time per operation in expectation and with high probability  $\star$ 
  - Strong guarantee on tail of distribution of  $T(n)$
  - $O(\lg n)$  “almost always”

Other

October 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.2

treap  
red-black tree.  
balanced tree.  
B-tree.



## One linked list

Start from simplest data structure:  
**(sorted) linked list**

- Searches take  $\Theta(n)$  time in worst case
- How can we speed up searches?



October 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.3



## Two linked lists

Suppose we had *two* sorted linked lists  
(on subsets of the elements)

- Each element can appear in one or both lists
- How can we speed up searches?



October 26, 2005

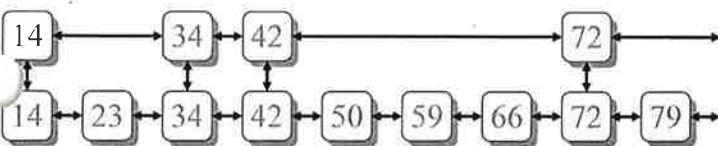
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.4



## Two linked lists as a subway

- IDEA:** Express and local subway lines  
(à la New York City 7th Avenue Line)
- Express line connects a few of the stations
  - Local line connects all stations
  - Links between lines at common stations



October 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

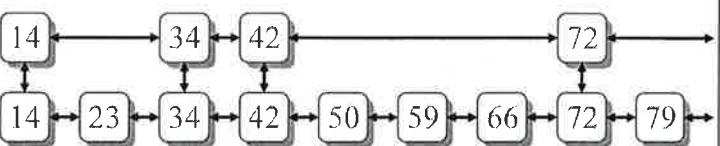
L11.5



## Searching in two linked lists

SEARCH( $x$ ):

- Walk right in top linked list ( $L_1$ ) until going right would go too far
- Walk down to bottom linked list ( $L_2$ )
- Walk right in  $L_2$  until element found (or not)



October 26, 2005

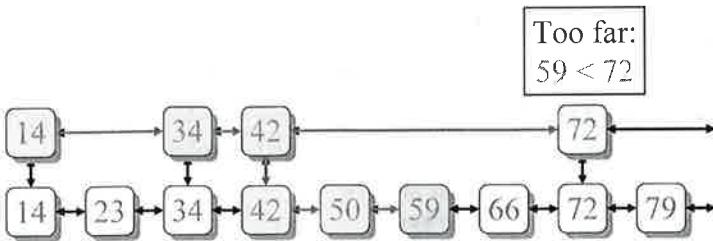
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.6



## Searching in two linked lists

EXAMPLE: SEARCH(59)



October 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

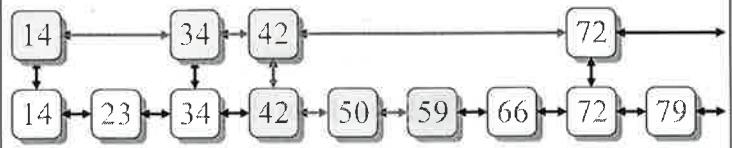
L11.7



## Design of two linked lists

QUESTION: Which nodes should be in  $L_1$ ?

- In a subway, the “popular stations”
- Here we care about worst-case performance
- Best approach:** Evenly space the nodes in  $L_1$
- But *how many nodes* should be in  $L_1$ ?



October 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

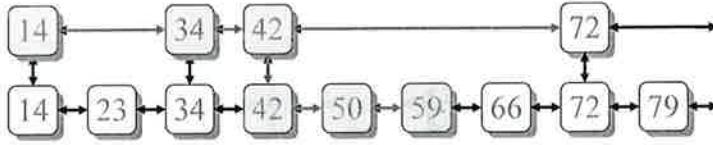
L11.8



## Analysis of two linked lists

ANALYSIS:

- Search cost is roughly  $|L_1| + \frac{|L_2|}{|L_1|}$
- Minimized (up to constant factors) when terms are equal
- $|L_1|^2 = |L_2| = n \Rightarrow |L_1| = \sqrt{n}$



October 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.9

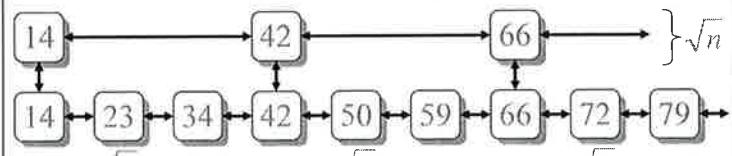


## Analysis of two linked lists

ANALYSIS:

- $|L_1| = \sqrt{n}$ ,  $|L_2| = n$
- Search cost is roughly

$$|L_1| + \frac{|L_2|}{|L_1|} = \sqrt{n} + \frac{n}{\sqrt{n}} = 2\sqrt{n}$$



October 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

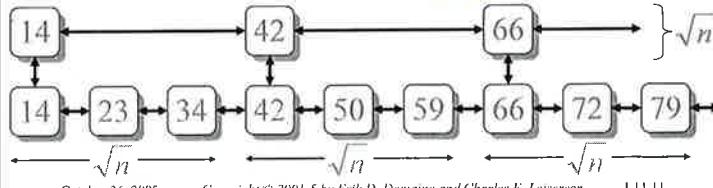
L11.10



## More linked lists

What if we had more sorted linked lists?

- 2 sorted lists  $\Rightarrow 2 \cdot \sqrt{n}$
- 3 sorted lists  $\Rightarrow 3 \cdot \sqrt[3]{n}$
- $k$  sorted lists  $\Rightarrow k \cdot \sqrt[k]{n}$
- $\lg n$  sorted lists  $\Rightarrow \lg n \cdot \sqrt[\lg n]{n} = 2 \lg n$



October 26, 2005

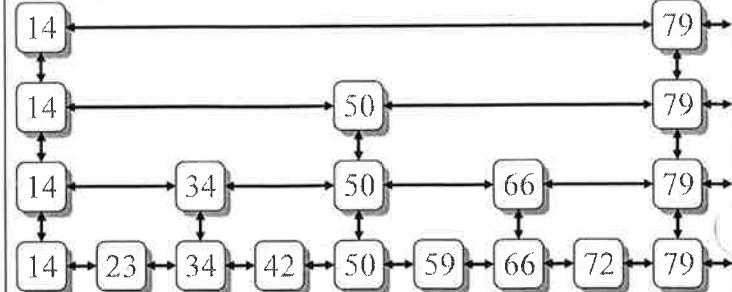
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.11



## $\lg n$ linked lists

$\lg n$  sorted linked lists are like a binary tree  
(in fact, level-linked B<sup>+</sup>-tree; see Problem Set 5)



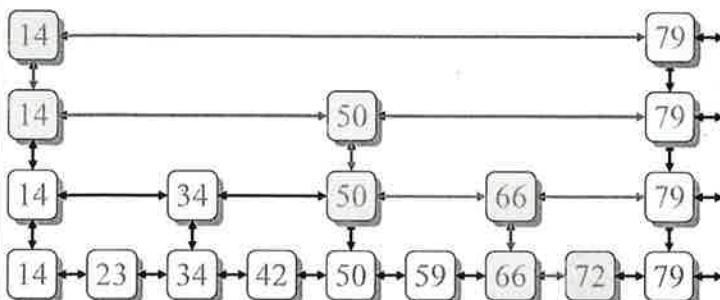
October 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.12

## Searching in $\lg n$ linked lists

EXAMPLE: SEARCH(72)



October 26, 2005

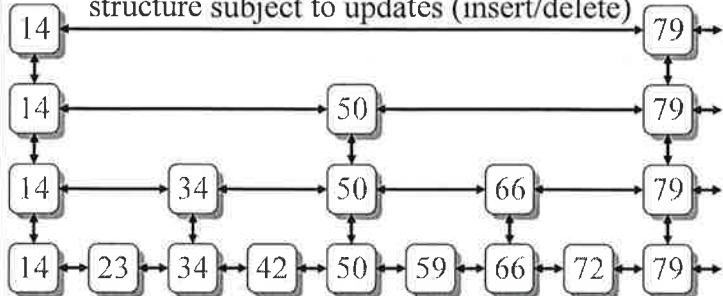
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.13

## Skip lists

*Ideal skip list* is this  $\lg n$  linked list structure

**Skip list data structure** maintains roughly this structure subject to updates (insert/delete)



October 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.14



## INSERT( $x$ )

To insert an element  $x$  into a skip list:

- SEARCH( $x$ ) to see where  $x$  fits in bottom list
- Always insert into bottom list

**INVARIANT:** Bottom list contains all elements

- Insert into some of the lists above...

**QUESTION:** To which other lists should we add  $x$ ?

October 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.15



## INSERT( $x$ )

**QUESTION:** To which other lists should we add  $x$ ?

**IDEA:** Flip a (fair) coin; if HEADS, promote  $x$  to next level up and flip again

- Probability of promotion to next level = 1/2
- On average:
  - 1/2 of the elements promoted 0 levels
  - 1/4 of the elements promoted 1 level
  - 1/8 of the elements promoted 2 levels
  - etc.

Approx.  
balanced  
?

October 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.16

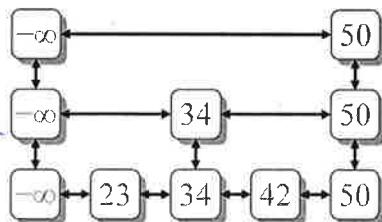


## Example of skip list

**EXERCISE:** Try building a skip list from scratch by repeated insertion using a real coin

**Small change:**

- Add special value to every list
- ⇒ can search with the same algorithm



October 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.17



## Skip lists

A **skip list** is the result of insertions (and deletions) from an initially empty structure (containing just  $-\infty$ )

- INSERT( $x$ ) uses random coin flips to decide promotion level
- DELETE( $x$ ) removes  $x$  from all lists containing it

October 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.18



## Skip lists

A **skip list** is the result of insertions (and deletions) from an initially empty structure (containing just  $-\infty$ )

- $\text{INSERT}(x)$  uses random coin flips to decide promotion level
- $\text{DELETE}(x)$  removes  $x$  from all lists containing it

**How good are skip lists? (speed/balance)**



- **INTUITIVELY:** Pretty good on average
- **CLAIM:** Really, really good, almost always

October 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.19



## With-high-probability theorem

**THEOREM:** *With high probability, every search in an  $n$ -element skip list costs  $O(\lg n)$*

October 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.20



## With-high-probability theorem

**THEOREM:** *With high probability, every search in a skip list costs  $O(\lg n)$*

- **INFORMALLY:** Event  $E$  occurs **with high probability (w.h.p.)** if, for any  $\alpha > 1$ , there is an appropriate choice of constants for which  $E$  occurs with probability at least  $1 - O(1/n^\alpha)$   
– In fact, constant in  $O(\lg n)$  depends on  $\alpha$
- **FORMALLY:** Parameterized event  $E_\alpha$  occurs **with high probability** if, for any  $\alpha \geq 1$ , there is an appropriate choice of constants for which  $E_\alpha$  occurs with probability at least  $1 - c_\alpha/n^\alpha$

October 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.21



## With-high-probability theorem

**THEOREM:** With high probability, every search in a skip list costs  $O(\lg n)$

- **INFORMALLY:** Event  $E$  occurs **with high probability (w.h.p.)** if, for any  $\alpha \geq 1$ , there is an appropriate choice of constants for which  $E$  occurs with probability at least  $1 - O(1/n^\alpha)$
- **IDEA:** Can make **error probability**  $O(1/n^\alpha)$  very small by setting  $\alpha$  large, e.g., 100
- Almost certainly, bound remains true for entire execution of polynomial-time algorithm

October 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.22



## Boole's inequality / union bound

Recall:

### BOOLE'S INEQUALITY / UNION BOUND:

For any random events  $E_1, E_2, \dots, E_k$ ,

$$\Pr\{E_1 \cup E_2 \cup \dots \cup E_k\} \leq \Pr\{E_1\} + \Pr\{E_2\} + \dots + \Pr\{E_k\}$$

### Application to with-high-probability events:

If  $k = n^{O(1)}$ , and each  $E_i$  occurs with high probability, then so does  $E_1 \cap E_2 \cap \dots \cap E_k$

October 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.23



## Analysis Warmup

**LEMMA:** With high probability,  $n$ -element skip list has  $O(\lg n)$  levels

### PROOF:

- Error probability for having at most  $c \lg n$  levels  
 $= \Pr\{\text{more than } c \lg n \text{ levels}\}$   
 $\leq n \cdot \Pr\{\text{element } x \text{ promoted at least } c \lg n \text{ times}\}$   
 $\quad \quad \quad \text{(by Boole's Inequality)}$   
 $= n \cdot (1/2)^{c \lg n}$   
 $= n \cdot (1/n^c)$   
 $= 1/n^{c-1}$

October 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.24



## Analysis Warmup

**LEMMA:** With high probability,  
 $n$ -element skip list has  $O(\lg n)$  levels

**PROOF:**

- Error probability for having at most  $c \lg n$  levels  $\leq 1/n^{c-1}$
- This probability is **polynomially small**, i.e., at most  $n^\alpha$  for  $\alpha = c - 1$ .
- We can make  $\alpha$  arbitrarily large by choosing the constant  $c$  in the  $O(\lg n)$  bound accordingly.  $\square$

October 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.25



## Proof of theorem

**THEOREM:** With high probability, every search in an  $n$ -element skip list costs  $O(\lg n)$

**COOL IDEA:** Analyze search backwards—leaf to root

- Search starts [ends] at leaf (node in bottom level)
- At each node visited:
  - If node wasn't promoted higher (got TAILS here), then we go [came from] left
  - If node was promoted higher (got HEADS here), then we go [came from] up
- Search stops [starts] at the root (or  $-\infty$ )

October 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.26



## Proof of theorem

**THEOREM:** With high probability, every search in an  $n$ -element skip list costs  $O(\lg n)$

**COOL IDEA:** Analyze search backwards—leaf to root

**PROOF:**

- Search makes “up” and “left” moves until it reaches the root (or  $-\infty$ )
- Number of “up” moves  $<$  number of levels  $\leq c \lg n$  w.h.p. (*Lemma*)

⇒ w.h.p., number of moves is at most the number of times we need to flip a coin to get  $c \lg n$  HEADS

October 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.27



## Coin flipping analysis

**CLAIM:** Number of coin flips until  $c \lg n$  HEADS  $= \Theta(\lg n)$  with high probability

**PROOF:**

Obviously  $\Omega(\lg n)$ : at least  $c \lg n$

Prove  $O(\lg n)$  “by example”:

- Say we make  $10 c \lg n$  flips
- When are there at least  $c \lg n$  HEADS?

(Later generalize to arbitrary values of 10)

October 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.28



## Coin flipping analysis

**CLAIM:** Number of coin flips until  $c \lg n$  HEADS  $= \Theta(\lg n)$  with high probability

**PROOF:**

$$\Pr\{\text{exactly } c \lg n \text{ HEADS}\} = \underbrace{\binom{10c \lg n}{c \lg n}}_{\text{orders}} \cdot \underbrace{\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{c \lg n}}_{\text{HEADS}} \cdot \underbrace{\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{9c \lg n}}_{\text{TAILS}}$$

$$\Pr\{\text{at most } c \lg n \text{ HEADS}\} \leq \underbrace{\binom{10c \lg n}{c \lg n}}_{\text{overestimate on orders}} \cdot \underbrace{\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{9c \lg n}}_{\text{TAILS}}$$

October 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.29



## Coin flipping analysis (cont'd)

$$\begin{aligned} &\bullet \text{Recall bounds on } \binom{y}{x}: \quad \left(\frac{y}{x}\right)^x \leq \binom{y}{x} \leq \left(e \frac{y}{x}\right)^x \quad \star \\ &\bullet \Pr\{\text{at most } c \lg n \text{ HEADS}\} \leq \underbrace{\left(\frac{10c \lg n}{c \lg n}\right)}_{\leq 10} \cdot \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{9c \lg n} \\ &\quad \leq \left(e \frac{10c \lg n}{c \lg n}\right)^{c \lg n} \cdot \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{9c \lg n} \\ &\quad = (10e)^{c \lg n} 2^{-9c \lg n} \\ &\quad = 2^{\lg(10e) \cdot c \lg n} 2^{-9c \lg n} \\ &\quad = 2^{\lg(10e) \cdot c \lg n} \\ &\quad = 1/n^\alpha \text{ for } \alpha = [9 - \lg(10e)] \cdot c \end{aligned}$$

October 26, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L11.30



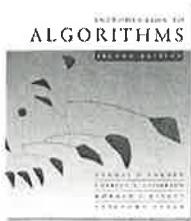
## Coin flipping analysis (cont'd)

- $\Pr\{\text{at most } c \lg n \text{ HEADS}\} \leq 1/n^\alpha$  for  $\alpha = [9 - \lg(10e)]c$
- **KEY PROPERTY:**  $\alpha \rightarrow \infty$  as  $10 \rightarrow \infty$ , for any  $c$
- So set 10, i.e., constant in  $O(\lg n)$  bound,  
large enough to meet desired  $\alpha$  □

This completes the proof of the coin-flipping claim  
and the proof of the theorem.

# Introduction to Algorithms

6.046J/18.401J



**LECTURE 13**  
**Amortized Analysis**  
• Dynamic tables  
• Aggregate method  
• Accounting method  
• Potential method

Prof. Charles E. Leiserson

October 31, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.1



## How large should a hash table be?

**Goal:** Make the table as small as possible, but large enough so that it won't overflow (or otherwise become inefficient).

**Problem:** What if we don't know the proper size in advance?

**Solution:** Dynamic tables.

**IDEA:** Whenever the table overflows, "grow" it by allocating (via `malloc` or `new`) a new, larger table. Move all items from the old table into the new one, and free the storage for the old table.

October 31, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.2



## Example of a dynamic table

1. INSERT
2. INSERT



October 31, 2005

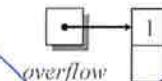
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.3



## Example of a dynamic table

1. INSERT
2. INSERT



October 31, 2005

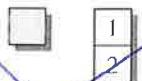
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.4



## Example of a dynamic table

1. INSERT
2. INSERT



October 31, 2005

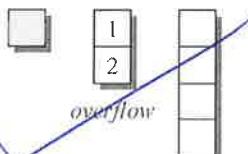
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.5



## Example of a dynamic table

1. INSERT
2. INSERT
3. INSERT



October 31, 2005

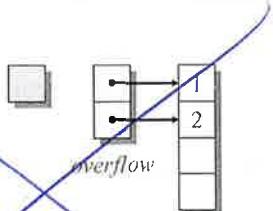
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.6



## Example of a dynamic table

1. INSERT
2. INSERT
3. INSERT



October 31, 2005

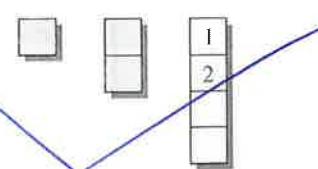
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.7



## Example of a dynamic table

1. INSERT
2. INSERT
3. INSERT



October 31, 2005

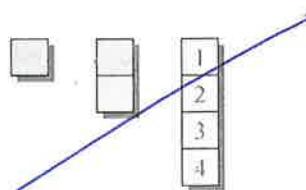
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.8



## Example of a dynamic table

1. INSERT
2. INSERT
3. INSERT
4. INSERT



October 31, 2005

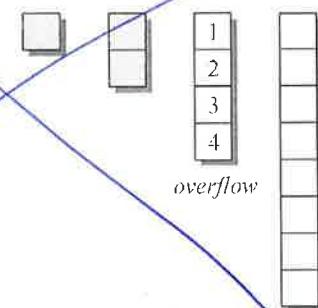
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.9



## Example of a dynamic table

1. INSERT
2. INSERT
3. INSERT
4. INSERT
5. INSERT



October 31, 2005

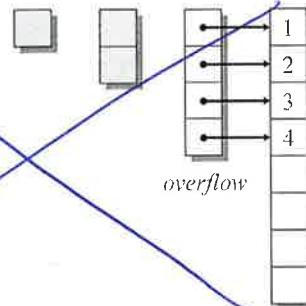
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.10



## Example of a dynamic table

1. INSERT
2. INSERT
3. INSERT
4. INSERT
5. INSERT



October 31, 2005

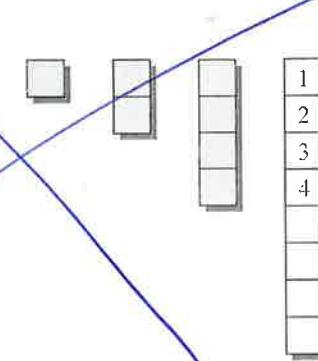
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.11



## Example of a dynamic table

1. INSERT
2. INSERT
3. INSERT
4. INSERT
5. INSERT



October 31, 2005

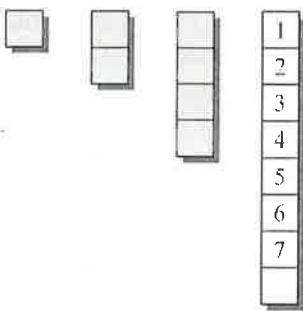
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.12



## Example of a dynamic table

1. INSERT
2. INSERT
3. INSERT
4. INSERT
5. INSERT
6. INSERT
7. INSERT



October 31, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.13



## Worst-case analysis

Consider a sequence of  $n$  insertions. The worst-case time to execute one insertion is  $\Theta(n)$ . Therefore, the worst-case time for  $n$  insertions is  $n \cdot \Theta(n) = \Theta(n^2)$ .

**WRONG!** In fact, the worst-case cost for  $n$  insertions is only  $\Theta(n) \ll \Theta(n^2)$ .

Let's see why.

October 31, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.14



## Tighter analysis

Let  $c_i$  = the cost of the  $i$ th insertion  
 $= \begin{cases} i & \text{if } i-1 \text{ is an exact power of 2,} \\ 1 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$

| $i$      | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9  | 10 |
|----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| $size_i$ | 1 | 2 | 4 | 4 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 16 | 16 |
| $c_i$    | 1 | 2 | 3 | 1 | 5 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 9  | 1  |

October 31, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.15



## Tighter analysis

Let  $c_i$  = the cost of the  $i$ th insertion  
 $= \begin{cases} i & \text{if } i-1 \text{ is an exact power of 2,} \\ 1 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$

| $i$      | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9  | 10 |
|----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| $size_i$ | 1 | 2 | 4 | 4 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 16 | 16 |
| $c_i$    | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1  | 1  |

October 31, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.16



## Tighter analysis (continued)

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Cost of } n \text{ insertions} &= \sum_{i=1}^n c_i \quad \text{geometric} \\ &\leq n + \sum_{j=0}^{\lfloor \lg(n-1) \rfloor} 2^j \quad \text{Sequence} \\ &\leq 3n \\ &= \Theta(n). \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the average cost of each dynamic-table operation is  $\Theta(n)/n = \Theta(1)$ .

October 31, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.17



## Amortized analysis

An amortized analysis is any strategy for analyzing a sequence of operations to show that the average cost per operation is small, even though a single operation within the sequence might be expensive.

Even though we're taking averages, however, probability is not involved!

- An amortized analysis guarantees the average performance of each operation in the *worst case*.

October 31, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.18



## Types of amortized analyses

Three common amortization arguments:

- 1 the aggregate method,
- 2 the accounting method,
- 3 the potential method.

We've just seen an aggregate analysis.

The aggregate method, though simple, lacks the precision of the other two methods. In particular, the accounting and potential methods allow a specific amortized cost to be allocated to each operation.

October 31, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.19



## Accounting method

- Charge  $i$ th operation a fictitious amortized cost  $\hat{c}_i$ , where \$1 pays for 1 unit of work (i.e., time).
- This fee is consumed to perform the operation.
- Any amount not immediately consumed is stored in the **bank** for use by subsequent operations.
- The bank balance must not go negative! We must ensure that

$$\sum_{i=1}^n c_i \leq \sum_{i=1}^n \hat{c}_i$$

for all  $n$ .

- Thus, the total amortized costs provide an upper bound on the total true costs.

October 31, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.20



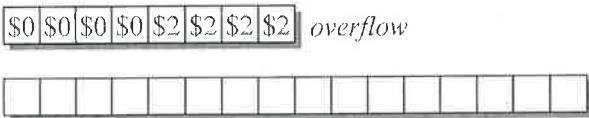
## Accounting analysis of dynamic tables

Charge an amortized cost of  $\hat{c}_i = \$3$  for the  $i$ th insertion.

- \$1 pays for the immediate insertion.
- \$2 is stored for later table doubling.

When the table doubles, \$1 pays to move a recent item, and \$1 pays to move an old item.

**Example:**



October 31, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.21



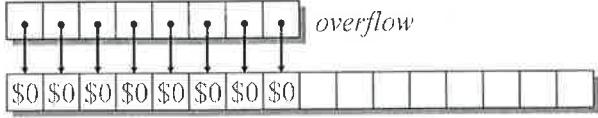
## Accounting analysis of dynamic tables

Charge an amortized cost of  $\hat{c}_i = \$3$  for the  $i$ th insertion.

- \$1 pays for the immediate insertion.
- \$2 is stored for later table doubling.

When the table doubles, \$1 pays to move a recent item, and \$1 pays to move an old item.

**Example:**



October 31, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.22



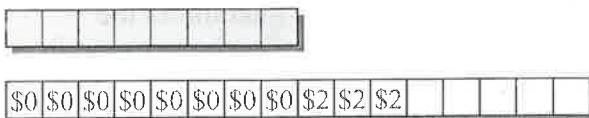
## Accounting analysis of dynamic tables

Charge an amortized cost of  $\hat{c}_i = \$3$  for the  $i$ th insertion.

- \$1 pays for the immediate insertion.
- \$2 is stored for later table doubling.

When the table doubles, \$1 pays to move a recent item, and \$1 pays to move an old item.

**Example:**



October 31, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.23



## Accounting analysis (continued)

**Key invariant:** Bank balance never drops below 0. Thus, the sum of the amortized costs provides an upper bound on the sum of the true costs.

| $i$         | 1  | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9  | 10 |
|-------------|----|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| $size_i$    | 1  | 2 | 4 | 4 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 16 | 16 |
| $c_i$       | 1  | 2 | 3 | 1 | 5 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 9  | 1  |
| $\hat{c}_i$ | 2* | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3  | 3  |
| $bank_i$    | 1  | 2 | 2 | 4 | 2 | 4 | 6 | 8 | 2  | 4  |

\*Okay, so I lied. The first operation costs only \$2, not \$3.

October 31, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.24



## Potential method

**IDEA:** View the bank account as the potential energy (*à la physics*) of the dynamic set.

### Framework:

- Start with an initial data structure  $D_0$ .
- Operation  $i$  transforms  $D_{i-1}$  to  $D_i$ .
- The cost of operation  $i$  is  $c_i$ .
- Define a potential function  $\Phi : \{D_i\} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ , such that  $\Phi(D_0) = 0$  and  $\Phi(D_i) \geq 0$  for all  $i$ .
- The amortized cost  $\hat{c}_i$  with respect to  $\Phi$  is defined to be  $\hat{c}_i = c_i + \Phi(D_i) - \Phi(D_{i-1})$ .

October 31, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.25



## Understanding potentials

$$\hat{c}_i = c_i + \underbrace{\Phi(D_i) - \Phi(D_{i-1})}_{\text{potential difference } \Delta\Phi_i}$$

- 
- If  $\Delta\Phi_i > 0$ , then  $\hat{c}_i > c_i$ . Operation  $i$  stores work in the data structure for later use.
  - If  $\Delta\Phi_i < 0$ , then  $\hat{c}_i < c_i$ . The data structure delivers up stored work to help pay for operation  $i$ .

October 31, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.26



## The amortized costs bound the true costs

The total amortized cost of  $n$  operations is

$$\sum_{i=1}^n \hat{c}_i = \sum_{i=1}^n (c_i + \Phi(D_i) - \Phi(D_{i-1}))$$

Summing both sides.

October 31, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.27



## The amortized costs bound the true costs

The total amortized cost of  $n$  operations is

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{i=1}^n \hat{c}_i &= \sum_{i=1}^n (c_i + \Phi(D_i) - \Phi(D_{i-1})) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n c_i + \Phi(D_n) - \Phi(D_0) \end{aligned}$$

The series telescopes.

October 31, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.28



## The amortized costs bound the true costs

The total amortized cost of  $n$  operations is

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{i=1}^n \hat{c}_i &= \sum_{i=1}^n (c_i + \Phi(D_i) - \Phi(D_{i-1})) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n c_i + \Phi(D_n) - \Phi(D_0) \\ &\geq \sum_{i=1}^n c_i \quad \text{since } \Phi(D_n) \geq 0 \text{ and } \Phi(D_0) = 0. \end{aligned}$$

October 31, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.29



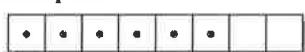
## Potential analysis of table doubling

Define the potential of the table after the  $i$ th insertion by  $\Phi(D_i) = 2^i - 2^{\lceil \lg i \rceil}$ . (Assume that  $2^{\lceil \lg 0 \rceil} = 0$ .)

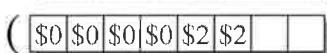
### Note:

- $\Phi(D_0) = 0$ ,
- $\Phi(D_i) \geq 0$  for all  $i$ .

### Example:



$$\Phi = 2 \cdot 6 - 2^3 = 4$$



accounting method)

October 31, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.30



## Calculation of amortized costs

The amortized cost of the  $i$ th insertion is

$$\hat{c}_i = c_i + \Phi(D_i) - \Phi(D_{i-1})$$

October 31, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.31



## Calculation of amortized costs

The amortized cost of the  $i$ th insertion is

$$\hat{c}_i = c_i + \Phi(D_i) - \Phi(D_{i-1})$$

$$= \begin{cases} i & \text{if } i-1 \text{ is an exact power of 2,} \\ 1 & \text{otherwise;} \end{cases}$$

$$+ (2i - 2^{\lceil \lg i \rceil}) - (2(i-1) - 2^{\lceil \lg(i-1) \rceil})$$

October 31, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.32



## Calculation of amortized costs

The amortized cost of the  $i$ th insertion is

$$\hat{c}_i = c_i + \Phi(D_i) - \Phi(D_{i-1})$$

$$= \begin{cases} i & \text{if } i-1 \text{ is an exact power of 2,} \\ 1 & \text{otherwise;} \end{cases}$$

$$+ (2i - 2^{\lceil \lg i \rceil}) - (2(i-1) - 2^{\lceil \lg(i-1) \rceil})$$

$$= \begin{cases} i & \text{if } i-1 \text{ is an exact power of 2,} \\ 1 & \text{otherwise;} \end{cases}$$

$$+ 2 - 2^{\lceil \lg i \rceil} + 2^{\lceil \lg(i-1) \rceil}.$$

October 31, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.33



## Calculation

**Case 1:**  $i-1$  is an exact power of 2.

$$\hat{c}_i = i + 2 - 2^{\lceil \lg i \rceil} + 2^{\lceil \lg(i-1) \rceil}$$

October 31, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.34



## Calculation

**Case 1:**  $i-1$  is an exact power of 2.

$$\hat{c}_i = i + 2 - 2^{\lceil \lg i \rceil} + 2^{\lceil \lg(i-1) \rceil}$$

$$= i + 2 - 2(i-1) + (i-1)$$

October 31, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.35



## Calculation

**Case 1:**  $i-1$  is an exact power of 2.

$$\hat{c}_i = i + 2 - 2^{\lceil \lg i \rceil} + 2^{\lceil \lg(i-1) \rceil}$$

$$= i + 2 - 2(i-1) + (i-1)$$

$$= i + 2 - 2i + 2 + i - 1$$

October 31, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.36



## Calculation

**Case 1:**  $i - 1$  is an exact power of 2.

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{c}_i &= i + 2 - 2^{\lceil \lg i \rceil} + 2^{\lceil \lg(i-1) \rceil} \\ &= i + 2 - 2(i-1) + (i-1) \\ &= i + 2 - 2i + 2 + i - 1 \\ &= 3\end{aligned}$$

October 31, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.37



## Calculation

**Case 1:**  $i - 1$  is an exact power of 2.

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{c}_i &= i + 2 - 2^{\lceil \lg i \rceil} + 2^{\lceil \lg(i-1) \rceil} \\ &= i + 2 - 2(i-1) + (i-1) \\ &= i + 2 - 2i + 2 + i - 1 \\ &= 3\end{aligned}$$

**Case 2:**  $i - 1$  is *not* an exact power of 2.

$$\hat{c}_i = 1 + 2 - 2^{\lceil \lg i \rceil} + 2^{\lceil \lg(i-1) \rceil}$$

October 31, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.38



## Calculation

**Case 1:**  $i - 1$  is an exact power of 2.

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{c}_i &= i + 2 - 2^{\lceil \lg i \rceil} + 2^{\lceil \lg(i-1) \rceil} \\ &= i + 2 - 2(i-1) + (i-1) \\ &= i + 2 - 2i + 2 + i - 1 \\ &= 3\end{aligned}$$

**Case 2:**  $i - 1$  is *not* an exact power of 2.

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{c}_i &= 1 + 2 - 2^{\lceil \lg i \rceil} + 2^{\lceil \lg(i-1) \rceil} \\ &= 3 \quad (\text{since } 2^{\lceil \lg i \rceil} = 2^{\lceil \lg(i-1) \rceil})\end{aligned}$$

October 31, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.39



## Calculation

**Case 1:**  $i - 1$  is an exact power of 2.

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{c}_i &= i + 2 - 2^{\lceil \lg i \rceil} + 2^{\lceil \lg(i-1) \rceil} \\ &= i + 2 - 2(i-1) + (i-1) \\ &= i + 2 - 2i + 2 + i - 1 \\ &= 3\end{aligned}$$

**Case 2:**  $i - 1$  is *not* an exact power of 2.

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{c}_i &= 1 + 2 - 2^{\lceil \lg i \rceil} + 2^{\lceil \lg(i-1) \rceil} \\ &= 3\end{aligned}$$

Therefore,  $n$  insertions cost  $\Theta(n)$  in the worst case.

October 31, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.40



## Calculation

**Case 1:**  $i - 1$  is an exact power of 2.

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{c}_i &= i + 2 - 2^{\lceil \lg i \rceil} + 2^{\lceil \lg(i-1) \rceil} \\ &= i + 2 - 2(i-1) + (i-1) \\ &= i + 2 - 2i + 2 + i - 1 \\ &= 3\end{aligned}$$

**Case 2:**  $i - 1$  is *not* an exact power of 2.

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{c}_i &= 1 + 2 - 2^{\lceil \lg i \rceil} + 2^{\lceil \lg(i-1) \rceil} \\ &= 3\end{aligned}$$



## Conclusions

- Amortized costs can provide a clean abstraction of data-structure performance.
- Any of the analysis methods can be used when an amortized analysis is called for, but each method has some situations where it is arguably the simplest or most precise.
- Different schemes may work for assigning amortized costs in the accounting method, or potentials in the potential method, sometimes yielding radically different bounds.

Therefore,  $n$  insertions cost  $\Theta(n)$  in the worst case.

**Exercise:** Fix the bug in this analysis to show that the amortized cost of the first insertion is only 2.

October 31, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.41

October 31, 2005

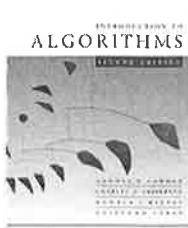
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L13.42



# Introduction to Algorithms

6.046J/18.401J



## LECTURE 14

### Competitive Analysis

- Self-organizing lists
- Move-to-front heuristic
- Competitive analysis of MTF

Prof. Charles E. Leiserson

November 2, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.1



## Self-organizing lists

List  $L$  of  $n$  elements

- The operation  $\text{ACCESS}(x)$  costs  $\text{rank}_L(x) =$  distance of  $x$  from the head of  $L$ .
- $L$  can be reordered by transposing adjacent elements at a cost of 1.

November 2, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.2



## Self-organizing lists

List  $L$  of  $n$  elements

- The operation  $\text{ACCESS}(x)$  costs  $\text{rank}_L(x) =$  distance of  $x$  from the head of  $L$ .
- $L$  can be reordered by transposing adjacent elements at a cost of 1.

Example:



Example:



Accessing the element with key 14 costs 4.

November 2, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.3

November 2, 2005

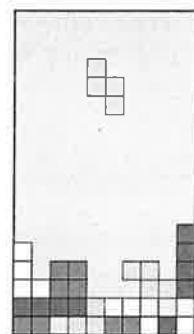
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.4



## On-line and off-line problems

**Definition.** A sequence  $S$  of operations is provided one at a time. For each operation, an *on-line algorithm*  $A$  must execute the operation immediately without any knowledge of future operations (e.g., *Tetris*).  
An *off-line* algorithm may see the whole sequence  $S$  in advance.



The game of Tetris

**Goal:** Minimize the total cost  $C_A(S)$ .

November 2, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.5

November 2, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.6



## Worst-case analysis of self-organizing lists

An adversary always accesses the tail ( $n$ th) element of  $L$ . Then, for any on-line algorithm  $A$ , we have

$$C_A(S) = \Omega(|S| \cdot n)$$

in the worst case.

November 2, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.7



## Average-case analysis of self-organizing lists

Suppose that element  $x$  is accessed with probability  $p(x)$ . Then, we have

$$E[C_A(S)] = \sum_{x \in L} p(x) \cdot \text{rank}_L(x),$$

which is minimized when  $L$  is sorted in decreasing order with respect to  $p$ .

**Heuristic:** Keep a count of the number of times each element is accessed, and maintain  $L$  in order of decreasing count.

November 2, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.8



## The move-to-front heuristic

**Practice:** Implementers discovered that the move-to-front (MTF) heuristic empirically yields good results.

**IDEA:** After accessing  $x$ , move  $x$  to the head of  $L$  using transposes:

$$\text{cost} = 2 \cdot \text{rank}_L(x).$$

The MTF heuristic responds well to locality in the access sequence  $S$ .

November 2, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.9



## Competitive analysis

**Definition.** An on-line algorithm  $A$  is  $\alpha$ -competitive if there exists a constant  $k$  such that for any sequence  $S$  of operations,

$$C_A(S) \leq \alpha \cdot C_{\text{OPT}}(S) + k,$$

where OPT is the optimal off-line algorithm (“God’s algorithm”).

November 2, 2005

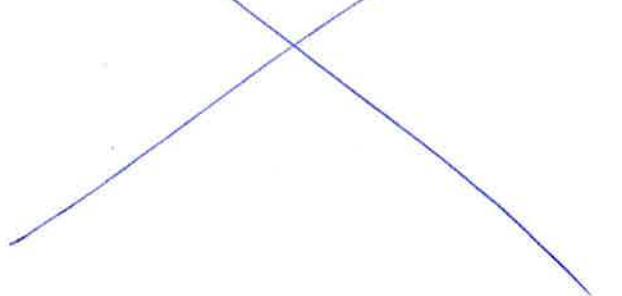
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.10



## MTF is O(1)-competitive

**Theorem.** MTF is 4-competitive for self-organizing lists.



November 2, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.11



## MTF is O(1)-competitive

**Theorem.** MTF is 4-competitive for self-organizing lists.

*Proof.* Let  $L_i$  be MTF’s list after the  $i$ th access, and let  $L_i^*$  be OPT’s list after the  $i$ th access.

Let  $c_i = \text{MTF’s cost for the } i\text{th operation}$

$$= 2 \cdot \text{rank}_{L_{i-1}}(x) \text{ if it accesses } x;$$

$c_i^* = \text{OPT’s cost for the } i\text{th operation}$  (OPT)

$$= \text{rank}_{L_{i-1}^*}(x) + t_i,$$

where  $t_i$  is the number of transposes that OPT performs.

November 2, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.12

## Potential function

Define the potential function  $\Phi: \{L_i\} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  by

$$\Phi(L_i) = 2 \cdot |\{(x, y) : x \prec_{L_i} y \text{ and } y \prec_{L_i^*} x\}|$$

$= 2 \cdot \# \text{ inversions}$ .

November 2, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.13

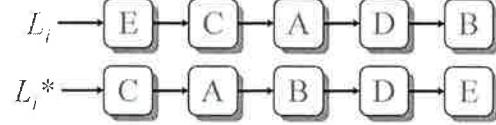
## Potential function

Define the potential function  $\Phi: \{L_i\} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  by

$$\Phi(L_i) = 2 \cdot |\{(x, y) : x \prec_{L_i} y \text{ and } y \prec_{L_i^*} x\}|$$

$= 2 \cdot \# \text{ inversions}$ .

**Example.**



November 2, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.14

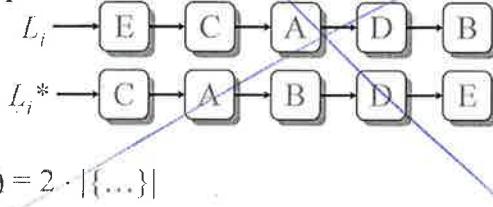
## Potential function

Define the potential function  $\Phi: \{L_i\} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  by

$$\Phi(L_i) = 2 \cdot |\{(x, y) : x \prec_{L_i} y \text{ and } y \prec_{L_i^*} x\}|$$

$= 2 \cdot \# \text{ inversions}$ .

**Example.**



$$\Phi(L_i) = 2 \cdot |\{\dots\}|$$

November 2, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.15

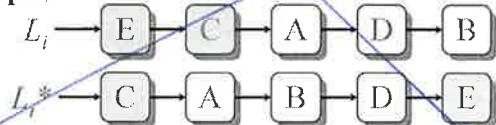
## Potential function

Define the potential function  $\Phi: \{L_i\} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  by

$$\Phi(L_i) = 2 \cdot |\{(x, y) : x \prec_{L_i} y \text{ and } y \prec_{L_i^*} x\}|$$

$= 2 \cdot \# \text{ inversions}$ .

**Example.**



$$\Phi(L_i) = 2 \cdot |\{(E, C), \dots\}|$$

November 2, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.16

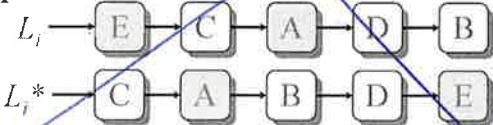
## Potential function

Define the potential function  $\Phi: \{L_i\} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  by

$$\Phi(L_i) = 2 \cdot |\{(x, y) : x \prec_{L_i} y \text{ and } y \prec_{L_i^*} x\}|$$

$= 2 \cdot \# \text{ inversions}$ .

**Example.**



$$\Phi(L_i) = 2 \cdot |\{(E, C), (E, A), \dots\}|$$

November 2, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.17

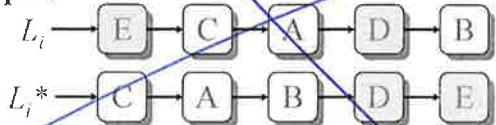
## Potential function

Define the potential function  $\Phi: \{L_i\} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  by

$$\Phi(L_i) = 2 \cdot |\{(x, y) : x \prec_{L_i} y \text{ and } y \prec_{L_i^*} x\}|$$

$= 2 \cdot \# \text{ inversions}$ .

**Example.**



$$\Phi(L_i) = 2 \cdot |\{(E, C), (E, A), (E, D), \dots\}|$$

November 2, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.18

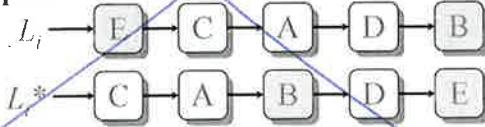


## Potential function

Define the potential function  $\Phi: \{L_i\} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  by

$$\Phi(L_i) = 2 \cdot |\{(x, y) : x \prec_{L_i} y \text{ and } y \prec_{L_i^*} x\}| \\ = 2 \cdot \# \text{ inversions}.$$

Example.



$$\Phi(L_i) = 2 \cdot |\{(E, C), (E, A), (E, D), (E, B), (D, B)\}|$$

November 2, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.19

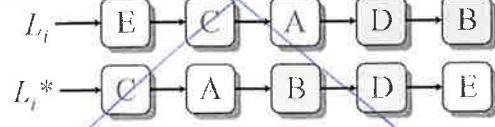


## Potential function

Define the potential function  $\Phi: \{L_i\} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  by

$$\Phi(L_i) = 2 \cdot |\{(x, y) : x \prec_{L_i} y \text{ and } y \prec_{L_i^*} x\}| \\ = 2 \cdot \# \text{ inversions}.$$

Example.



$$\Phi(L_i) = 2 \cdot |\{(E, C), (E, A), (E, D), (E, B), (D, B)\}|$$

November 2, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.20

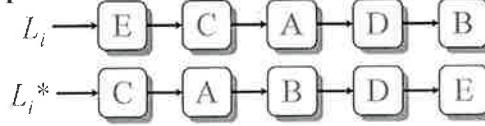


## Potential function

Define the potential function  $\Phi: \{L_i\} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  by

$$\Phi(L_i) = 2 \cdot |\{(x, y) : x \prec_{L_i} y \text{ and } y \prec_{L_i^*} x\}| \\ = 2 \cdot \# \text{ inversions}.$$

Example.



$$\Phi(L_i) = 2 \cdot |\{(E, C), (E, A), (E, D), (E, B), (D, B)\}| \\ = 10.$$

November 2, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.21



## Potential function

Define the potential function  $\Phi: \{L_i\} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  by

$$\Phi(L_i) = 2 \cdot |\{(x, y) : x \prec_{L_i} y \text{ and } y \prec_{L_i^*} x\}| \\ = 2 \cdot \# \text{ inversions}.$$

November 2, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.22



## Potential function

Define the potential function  $\Phi: \{L_i\} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  by

$$\Phi(L_i) = 2 \cdot |\{(x, y) : x \prec_{L_i} y \text{ and } y \prec_{L_i^*} x\}| \\ = 2 \cdot \# \text{ inversions}.$$

Note that

- $\Phi(L_i) \geq 0$  for  $i = 0, 1, \dots$ ,
- $\Phi(L_0) = 0$  if MTF and OPT start with the same list.

November 2, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.23



## Potential function

Define the potential function  $\Phi: \{L_i\} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  by

$$\Phi(L_i) = 2 \cdot |\{(x, y) : x \prec_{L_i} y \text{ and } y \prec_{L_i^*} x\}| \\ = 2 \cdot \# \text{ inversions}.$$

Note that

- $\Phi(L_i) \geq 0$  for  $i = 0, 1, \dots$ ,
- $\Phi(L_0) = 0$  if MTF and OPT start with the same list.

How much does  $\Phi$  change from 1 transpose?

- A transpose creates/destroys 1 inversion.
- $\Delta\Phi = \pm 2$ .



November 2, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.24



## What happens on an access?

Suppose that operation  $i$  accesses element  $x$ , and define

$$\begin{aligned} A &= \{y \in L_{i-1} : y \prec_{L_{i-1}} x \text{ and } y \prec_{L_{i-1}^*} x\}, \\ B &= \{y \in L_{i-1} : y \prec_{L_{i-1}} x \text{ and } y \succ_{L_{i-1}^*} x\}, \\ C &= \{y \in L_{i-1} : y \succ_{L_{i-1}} x \text{ and } y \prec_{L_{i-1}^*} x\}, \\ D &= \{y \in L_{i-1} : y \succ_{L_{i-1}} x \text{ and } y \succ_{L_{i-1}^*} x\}. \end{aligned}$$

|             |            |       |            |
|-------------|------------|-------|------------|
| $L_{i-1}$   | $A \cup B$ | $ x $ | $C \cup D$ |
| $L_{i-1}^*$ | $A \cup C$ | $ x $ | $B \cup D$ |

November 2, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L14.25



## What happens on an access?

|           |            |       |                                |
|-----------|------------|-------|--------------------------------|
| $L_{i-1}$ | $A \cup B$ | $ x $ | $C \cup D$                     |
|           |            |       | $r = \text{rank}_{L_{i-1}}(x)$ |

|             |            |       |                                    |
|-------------|------------|-------|------------------------------------|
| $L_{i-1}^*$ | $A \cup C$ | $ x $ | $B \cup D$                         |
|             |            |       | $r^* = \text{rank}_{L_{i-1}^*}(x)$ |

We have  $r = |A| + |B| + 1$  and  $r^* = |A| + |C| + 1$ .

November 2, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L14.26



## What happens on an access?

|           |            |       |                                |
|-----------|------------|-------|--------------------------------|
| $L_{i-1}$ | $A \cup B$ | $ x $ | $C \cup D$                     |
|           |            |       | $r = \text{rank}_{L_{i-1}}(x)$ |

|             |            |       |                                    |
|-------------|------------|-------|------------------------------------|
| $L_{i-1}^*$ | $A \cup C$ | $ x $ | $B \cup D$                         |
|             |            |       | $r^* = \text{rank}_{L_{i-1}^*}(x)$ |

We have  $r = |A| + |B| + 1$  and  $r^* = |A| + |C| + 1$ .

When MTF moves  $x$  to the front, it creates  $|A|$  inversions and destroys  $|B|$  inversions. Each transpose by OPT creates  $\leq 1$  inversion. Thus, we have

$$\Phi(L_i) - \Phi(L_{i-1}) \leq 2(|A| - |B| + t_i). \quad \text{From ORT}$$

November 2, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L14.27



## Amortized cost

The amortized cost for the  $i$ th operation of MTF with respect to  $\Phi$  is

$$\hat{c}_i = c_i + \Phi(L_i) - \Phi(L_{i-1})$$

November 2, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L14.28



## Amortized cost

The amortized cost for the  $i$ th operation of MTF with respect to  $\Phi$  is

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{c}_i &= c_i + \Phi(L_i) - \Phi(L_{i-1}) \\ &\leq 2r + 2(|A| - |B| + t_i) \end{aligned}$$



## Amortized cost

The amortized cost for the  $i$ th operation of MTF with respect to  $\Phi$  is

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{c}_i &= c_i + \Phi(L_i) - \Phi(L_{i-1}) \\ &\leq 2r + 2(|A| - |B| + t_i) \\ &= 2r + 2(|A| - (r - 1 - |A|) + t_i) \\ &\quad (\text{since } r = |A| + |B| + 1) \end{aligned}$$

November 2, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L14.29

November 2, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L14.30



## Amortized cost

The amortized cost for the  $i$ th operation of MTF with respect to  $\Phi$  is

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{c}_i &= c_i + \Phi(L_i) - \Phi(L_{i-1}) \\ &\leq 2r + 2(|A| - |B| + t_i) \\ &= 2r + 2(|A| - (r - 1 - |A|) + t_i) \\ &= 2r + 4|A| - 2r + 2 + 2t_i\end{aligned}$$

November 2, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.31



## Amortized cost

The amortized cost for the  $i$ th operation of MTF with respect to  $\Phi$  is

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{c}_i &= c_i + \Phi(L_i) - \Phi(L_{i-1}) \\ &\leq 2r + 2(|A| - |B| + t_i) \\ &= 2r + 2(|A| - (r - 1 - |A|) + t_i) \\ &= 2r + 4|A| - 2r + 2 + 2t_i \\ &= 4|A| + 2 + 2t_i\end{aligned}$$

November 2, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.32



## Amortized cost

The amortized cost for the  $i$ th operation of MTF with respect to  $\Phi$  is

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{c}_i &= c_i + \Phi(L_i) - \Phi(L_{i-1}) \\ &\leq 2r + 2(|A| - |B| + t_i) \\ &= 2r + 2(|A| - (r - 1 - |A|) + t_i) \\ &= 2r + 4|A| - 2r + 2 + 2t_i \\ &= 4|A| + 2 + 2t_i \\ &\leq 4(r^* + t_i)\end{aligned}$$

(since  $r^* = |A| + |C| + 1 \geq |A| + 1$ )

November 2, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.33



## Amortized cost

The amortized cost for the  $i$ th operation of MTF with respect to  $\Phi$  is

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{c}_i &= c_i + \Phi(L_i) - \Phi(L_{i-1}) \\ &\leq 2r + 2(|A| - |B| + t_i) \\ &= 2r + 2(|A| - (r - 1 - |A|) + t_i) \\ &= 2r + 4|A| - 2r + 2 + 2t_i \\ &= 4|A| + 2 + 2t_i \\ &\leq 4(r^* + t_i) \\ &= 4c_i^*\end{aligned}$$

November 2, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.34



## The grand finale

Thus, we have

$$C_{\text{MTF}}(S) = \sum_{i=1}^{|S|} c_i$$

November 2, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.35



## The grand finale

Thus, we have

$$\begin{aligned}C_{\text{MTF}}(S) &= \sum_{i=1}^{|S|} c_i \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^{|S|} (\hat{c}_i + \Phi(L_{i-1}) - \Phi(L_i))\end{aligned}$$

November 2, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.36



## The grand finale

Thus, we have

$$\begin{aligned} C_{\text{MTF}}(S) &= \sum_{i=1}^{|S|} c_i \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^{|S|} (\hat{c}_i + \Phi(L_{i-1}) - \Phi(L_i)) \\ &\leq \left( \sum_{i=1}^{|S|} 4c_i^* \right) + \Phi(L_0) - \Phi(L_{|S|}) \end{aligned}$$

November 2, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.37



## The grand finale

Thus, we have

$$\begin{aligned} C_{\text{MTF}}(S) &= \sum_{i=1}^{|S|} c_i \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^{|S|} (\hat{c}_i + \Phi(L_{i-1}) - \Phi(L_i)) \\ &\leq \left( \sum_{i=1}^{|S|} 4c_i^* \right) + \Phi(L_0) - \Phi(L_{|S|}) \\ &\leq 4 \cdot C_{\text{OPT}}(S), \end{aligned}$$

since  $\Phi(L_0) = 0$  and  $\Phi(L_{|S|}) \geq 0$ .  $\square$

November 2, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.38



## Addendum

If we count transpositions that move  $x$  toward the front as “free” (models splicing  $x$  in and out of  $L$  in constant time), then MTF is 2-competitive.

November 2, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.39



## Addendum

If we count transpositions that move  $x$  toward the front as “free” (models splicing  $x$  in and out of  $L$  in constant time), then MTF is 2-competitive.

What if  $L_0 \neq L_0^*$ ?

- Then,  $\Phi(L_0)$  might be  $\Theta(n^2)$  in the worst case.
- Thus,  $C_{\text{MTF}}(S) \leq 4 \cdot C_{\text{OPT}}(S) + \Theta(n^2)$ , which is still 4-competitive, since  $n^2$  is constant as  $|S| \rightarrow \infty$ .

November 2, 2005

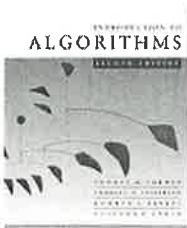
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L14.40



# Introduction to Algorithms

6.046J/18.401J



## LECTURE 15 Dynamic Programming

- Longest common subsequence
- Optimal substructure
- Overlapping subproblems

Prof. Charles E. Leiserson

November 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L15.1

## Dynamic programming

Design technique, like divide-and-conquer.

Example: **Longest Common Subsequence (LCS)**

- Given two sequences  $x[1 \dots m]$  and  $y[1 \dots n]$ , find a longest subsequence common to them both.

November 7, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L15.2

## Dynamic programming

Design technique, like divide-and-conquer.

Example: **Longest Common Subsequence (LCS)**

- Given two sequences  $x[1 \dots m]$  and  $y[1 \dots n]$ , find a longest subsequence common to them both.

“a” not “the”

November 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L15.3

## Dynamic programming

Design technique, like divide-and-conquer.

Example: **Longest Common Subsequence (LCS)**

- Given two sequences  $x[1 \dots m]$  and  $y[1 \dots n]$ , find a longest subsequence common to them both.

“a” not “the”

$x: A \ B \ C \ B \ D \ A \ B$

$y: B \ D \ C \ A \ B \ A$

November 7, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L15.4

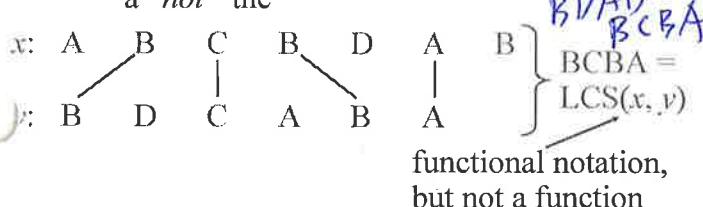
## Dynamic programming

Design technique, like divide-and-conquer.

Example: **Longest Common Subsequence (LCS)**

- Given two sequences  $x[1 \dots m]$  and  $y[1 \dots n]$ , find a longest subsequence common to them both.

“a” not “the”



November 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L15.5

## Brute-force LCS algorithm

Check every subsequence of  $x[1 \dots m]$  to see if it is also a subsequence of  $y[1 \dots n]$ .

November 7, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L15.6



## Brute-force LCS algorithm

Check every subsequence of  $x[1 \dots m]$  to see if it is also a subsequence of  $y[1 \dots n]$ .

### Analysis

- Checking =  $O(n)$  time per subsequence.
- $2^m$  subsequences of  $x$  (each bit-vector of length  $m$  determines a distinct subsequence of  $x$ ). *Slow*

Worst-case running time =  $O(n2^m)$   
= exponential time.

November 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L15.7



## Towards a better algorithm

### Simplification:

- ~~1. Look at the *length* of a longest-common subsequence.
  2. Extend the algorithm to find the LCS itself.~~

November 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L15.8



## Towards a better algorithm

### Simplification:

- ~~1. Look at the *length* of a longest-common subsequence.
  2. Extend the algorithm to find the LCS itself.~~

**Notation:** Denote the length of a sequence  $s$  by  $|s|$ .

November 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L15.9



## Towards a better algorithm

### Simplification:

- ~~1. Look at the *length* of a longest-common subsequence.
  2. Extend the algorithm to find the LCS itself.~~

**Notation:** Denote the length of a sequence  $s$  by  $|s|$ .

**Strategy:** Consider *prefixes* of  $x$  and  $y$ .

- Define  $c[i, j] = |\text{LCS}(x[1 \dots i], y[1 \dots j])|$ .
- Then,  $c[m, n] = |\text{LCS}(x, y)|$ .

November 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L15.10



## Recursive formulation

### Theorem.

$$c[i, j] = \begin{cases} c[i-1, j-1] + 1 & \text{if } x[i] = y[j], \\ \max\{c[i-1, j], c[i, j-1]\} & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

November 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L15.11

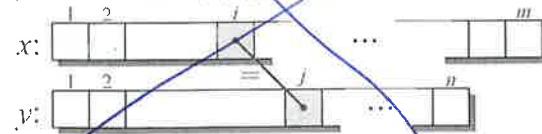


## Recursive formulation

### Theorem.

$$c[i, j] = \begin{cases} c[i-1, j-1] + 1 & \text{if } x[i] = y[j], \\ \max\{c[i-1, j], c[i, j-1]\} & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

*Proof.* Case  $x[i] = y[j]$ :



November 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L15.12

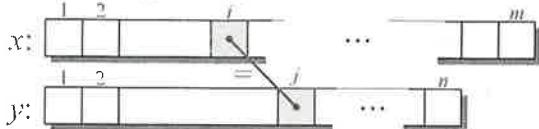


## Recursive formulation

**Theorem.**

$$c[i, j] = \begin{cases} c[i-1, j-1] + 1 & \text{if } x[i] = y[j], \\ \max\{c[i-1, j], c[i, j-1]\} & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

*Proof.* Case  $x[i] = y[j]$ :



Let  $z[1..k] = \text{LCS}(x[1..i], y[1..j])$ , where  $c[i, j] = k$ . Then,  $z[k] = x[i]$ , or else  $z$  could be extended. Thus,  $z[1..k-1]$  is CS of  $x[1..i-1]$  and  $y[1..j-1]$ .

November 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L15.13



## Proof (continued)

**Claim:**  $z[1..k-1] = \text{LCS}(x[1..i-1], y[1..j-1])$ .

Suppose  $w$  is a longer CS of  $x[1..i-1]$  and  $y[1..j-1]$ , that is,  $|w| > k-1$ . Then, *cut and paste*:  $w \parallel z[k]$  ( $w$  concatenated with  $z[k]$ ) is a common subsequence of  $x[1..i]$  and  $y[1..j]$  with  $|w \parallel z[k]| > k$ . Contradiction, proving the claim.

November 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L15.14



## Proof (continued)

**Claim:**  $z[1..k-1] = \text{LCS}(x[1..i-1], y[1..j-1])$ . Suppose  $w$  is a longer CS of  $x[1..i-1]$  and  $y[1..j-1]$ , that is,  $|w| > k-1$ . Then, *cut and paste*:  $w \parallel z[k]$  ( $w$  concatenated with  $z[k]$ ) is a common subsequence of  $x[1..i]$  and  $y[1..j]$  with  $|w \parallel z[k]| > k$ . Contradiction, proving the claim.

Thus,  $c[i-1, j-1] = k-1$ , which implies that  $c[i, j] = c[i-1, j-1] + 1$ .

Other cases are similar.  $\square$

November 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L15.15



## Dynamic-programming hallmark #1



**Optimal substructure**  
An optimal solution to a problem (instance) contains optimal solutions to subproblems.

November 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L15.16



## Dynamic-programming hallmark #1

**Optimal substructure**  
An optimal solution to a problem (instance) contains optimal solutions to subproblems.

If  $z = \text{LCS}(x, y)$ , then any prefix of  $z$  is an LCS of a prefix of  $x$  and a prefix of  $y$ .

November 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L15.17



## Recursive algorithm for LCS

$\text{LCS}(x, y, i, j)$  // ignoring base cases  
**if**  $x[i] = y[j]$   
**then**  $c[i, j] \leftarrow \text{LCS}(x, y, i-1, j-1) + 1$   
**else**  $c[i, j] \leftarrow \max\{\text{LCS}(x, y, i-1, j), \text{LCS}(x, y, i, j-1)\}$

November 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L15.18



## Recursive algorithm for LCS

```
LCS(x, y, i, j)
 if $x[i] = y[j]$
 then $c[i, j] \leftarrow \text{LCS}(x, y, i-1, j-1) + 1$
 else $c[i, j] \leftarrow \max\{\text{LCS}(x, y, i-1, j),$
 $\text{LCS}(x, y, i, j-1)\}$
```

**Worst-case:**  $x[i] \neq y[j]$ , in which case the algorithm evaluates two subproblems, each with only one parameter decremented.

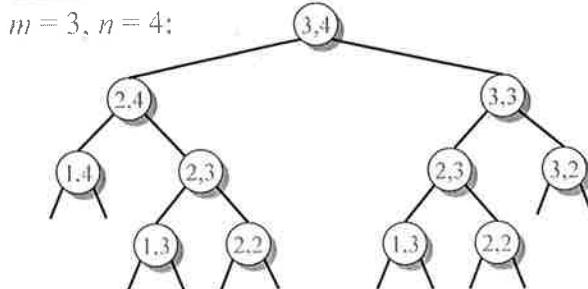
November 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L15.19



## Recursion tree



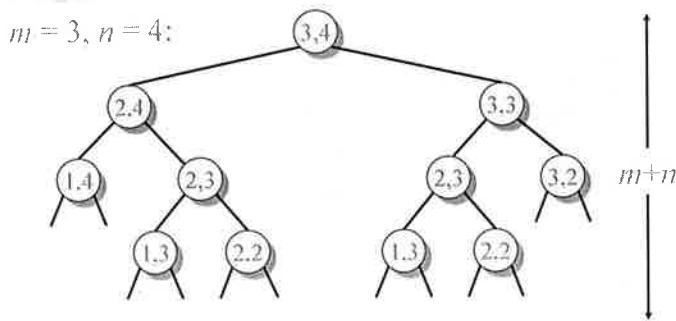
November 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L15.20



## Recursion tree



Height =  $m + n \Rightarrow$  work potentially exponential.

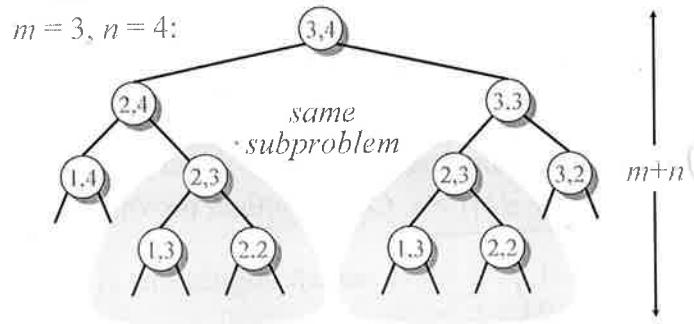
November 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L15.21



## Recursion tree



Height =  $m + n \Rightarrow$  work potentially exponential, but we're solving subproblems already solved!

November 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L15.22



## Dynamic-programming hallmark #2

**Overlapping subproblems**  
A recursive solution contains a  
“small” number of distinct  
subproblems repeated many times.



## Dynamic-programming hallmark #2

**Overlapping subproblems**  
A recursive solution contains a  
“small” number of distinct  
subproblems repeated many times.

The number of distinct LCS subproblems for two strings of lengths  $m$  and  $n$  is only  $mn$ .

November 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L15.23

November 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L15.24



## Memoization algorithm

**Memoization:** After computing a solution to a subproblem, store it in a table. Subsequent calls check the table to avoid redoing work.

November 7, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L15.25



## Memoization algorithm

**Memoization:** After computing a solution to a subproblem, store it in a table. Subsequent calls check the table to avoid redoing work.

```
LCS(x, y, i, j)
 if c[i, j] = NIL
 then if x[i] = y[j]
 then c[i, j] ← LCS(x, y, i-1, j-1) + 1
 else c[i, j] ← max { LCS(x, y, i-1, j),
 LCS(x, y, i, j-1) } } same
 as
 before
```

November 7, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L15.26



## Memoization algorithm

**Memoization:** After computing a solution to a subproblem, store it in a table. Subsequent calls check the table to avoid redoing work.

```
LCS(x, y, i, j)
 if c[i, j] = NIL
 then if x[i] = y[j]
 then c[i, j] ← LCS(x, y, i-1, j-1) + 1
 else c[i, j] ← max { LCS(x, y, i-1, j),
 LCS(x, y, i, j-1) } } same
 as
 before
```

Time =  $\Theta(mn)$  = constant work per table entry.

Space =  $\Theta(mn)$ .

November 7, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L15.27



## Dynamic-programming algorithm

### IDEA:

Compute the table bottom-up.

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
|   | A | B | C | B | D | A | B |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| B | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| D | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 2 |
| C | 0 | 0 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 |
| A | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 3 |
| B | 0 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 3 | 3 | 3 |
| A | 0 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 3 | 3 | 4 |

November 7, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L15.28



## Dynamic-programming algorithm

### IDEA:

Compute the table bottom-up.

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
|   | A | B | C | B | D | A | B |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| B | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| D | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 2 |
| C | 0 | 0 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 |
| A | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 3 | 3 |
| B | 0 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 3 | 3 | 4 |
| A | 0 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 3 | 3 | 4 |

November 7, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L15.29



## Dynamic-programming algorithm

### IDEA:

Compute the table bottom-up.

|   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|
|   | B | C | B | A |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| B | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| C | 0 | 0 | 1 | 2 |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 2 |
| B | 0 | 1 | 2 | 2 |
| 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 3 |
| A | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 |

November 7, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L15.30



## Dynamic-programming algorithm

IDEA:

Compute the  
table bottom-up.

Time =  $\Theta(mn)$ .

Reconstruct  
LCS by tracing  
backwards.

Space =  $\Theta(mn)$ .

Exercise:  
 $O(\min\{m, n\})$ .

|   | B | C | B | A |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| B | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| C | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| B | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| A | 0 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 2 |
| B | 0 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 3 |
| C | 0 | 0 | 1 | 2 | 2 |
| B | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 |
| A | 0 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 3 |
| B | 0 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 3 |
| C | 0 | 0 | 1 | 2 | 2 |
| B | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 |
| A | 0 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 3 |
| B | 0 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 3 |
| C | 0 | 0 | 1 | 2 | 2 |
| B | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 |
| A | 0 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 3 |
| B | 0 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 3 |
| C | 0 | 0 | 1 | 2 | 2 |
| B | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 |
| A | 0 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 3 |

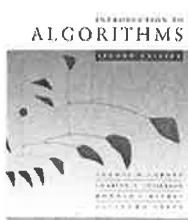
November 7, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L15.31

# Introduction to Algorithms

6.046J/18.401J



## LECTURE 16 Greedy Algorithms (and Graphs)

- Graph representation
- Minimum spanning trees
- Optimal substructure
- Greedy choice
- Prim's greedy MST algorithm

Prof. Charles E. Leiserson

November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.1



## Graphs (review)

**Definition.** A *directed graph (digraph)*  $G = (V, E)$  is an ordered pair consisting of

- a set  $V$  of *vertices* (singular: *vertex*),
- a set  $E \subseteq V \times V$  of *edges*.

In an *undirected graph*  $G = (V, E)$ , the edge set  $E$  consists of *unordered* pairs of vertices.

In either case, we have  $|E| = O(V^2)$ . Moreover, if  $G$  is connected, then  $|E| \geq |V| - 1$ , which implies that  $\lg |E| = \Theta(\lg V)$ .

(Review CLRS, Appendix B.)

November 9, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.2



## Adjacency-matrix representation

The *adjacency matrix* of a graph  $G = (V, E)$ , where  $V = \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ , is the matrix  $A[1 \dots n, 1 \dots n]$  given by

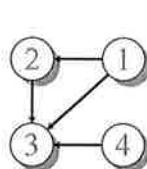
$$A[i, j] = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } (i, j) \in E, \\ 0 & \text{if } (i, j) \notin E. \end{cases}$$



## Adjacency-matrix representation

The *adjacency matrix* of a graph  $G = (V, E)$ , where  $V = \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ , is the matrix  $A[1 \dots n, 1 \dots n]$  given by

$$A[i, j] = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } (i, j) \in E, \\ 0 & \text{if } (i, j) \notin E. \end{cases}$$



| $A$ | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| 1   | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| 2   | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| 3   | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 4   | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 |

$\Theta(V^2)$  storage  
 $\Rightarrow$  dense  
representation.

November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.3

November 9, 2005

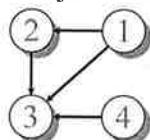
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.4



## Adjacency-list representation

An *adjacency list* of a vertex  $v \in V$  is the list  $Adj[v]$  of vertices adjacent to  $v$ .

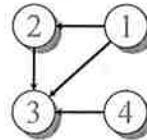


$$\begin{aligned} Adj[1] &= \{2, 3\} \\ Adj[2] &= \{3\} \\ Adj[3] &= \{\} \\ Adj[4] &= \{3\} \end{aligned}$$



## Adjacency-list representation

An *adjacency list* of a vertex  $v \in V$  is the list  $Adj[v]$  of vertices adjacent to  $v$ .



$$\begin{aligned} Adj[1] &= \{2, 3\} \\ Adj[2] &= \{3\} \\ Adj[3] &= \{\} \\ Adj[4] &= \{3\} \end{aligned}$$

For undirected graphs,  $|Adj[v]| = \text{degree}(v)$ .  
For digraphs,  $|Adj[v]| = \text{out-degree}(v)$ .

November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.5

November 9, 2005

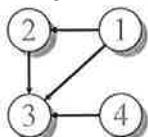
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.6



## Adjacency-list representation

An *adjacency list* of a vertex  $v \in V$  is the list  $\text{Adj}[v]$  of vertices adjacent to  $v$ .



$$\begin{aligned}\text{Adj}[1] &= \{2, 3\} \\ \text{Adj}[2] &= \{3\} \\ \text{Adj}[3] &= \{\} \\ \text{Adj}[4] &= \{3\}\end{aligned}$$

For undirected graphs,  $|\text{Adj}[v]| = \text{degree}(v)$ .

For digraphs,  $|\text{Adj}[v]| = \text{out-degree}(v)$ .

**Handshaking Lemma:**  $\sum_{v \in V} \text{degree}(v) = 2|E|$  for undirected graphs  $\Rightarrow$  adjacency lists use  $\Theta(V+E)$  storage — a *sparse* representation (for either type of graph).

November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.7



## Minimum spanning trees

**Input:** A connected, undirected graph  $G = (V, E)$  with weight function  $w : E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ .

- For simplicity, assume that all edge weights are distinct. (CLRS covers the general case.)

November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.8



## Minimum spanning trees

**Input:** A connected, undirected graph  $G = (V, E)$  with weight function  $w : E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ .

- For simplicity, assume that all edge weights are distinct. (CLRS covers the general case.)

**Output:** A *spanning tree*  $T$  — a tree that connects all vertices — of minimum weight:

$$w(T) = \sum_{(u,v) \in T} w(u, v).$$

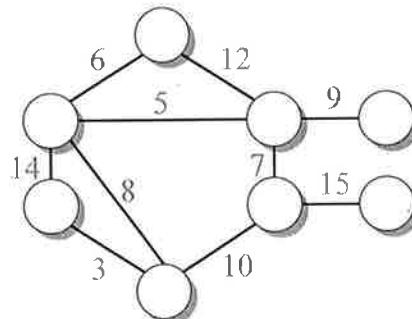
November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.9



## Example of MST



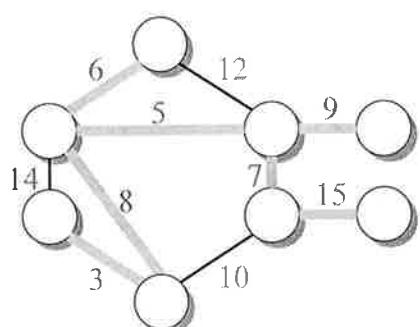
November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.10



## Example of MST



November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

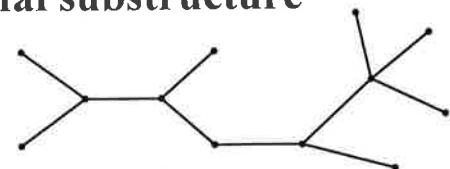
L16.11



## Optimal substructure

MST  $T$ :

(Other edges of  $G$  are not shown.)



November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.12

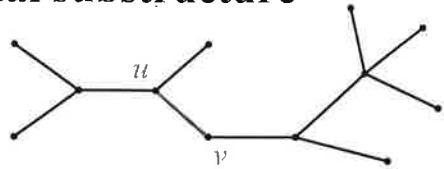


## Optimal substructure

MST  $T$ :

(Other edges of  $G$  are not shown.)

Remove any edge  $(u, v) \in T$ .



November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.13

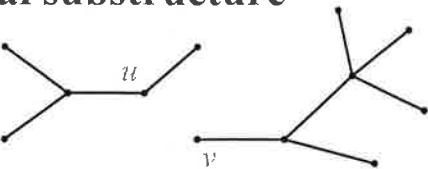


## Optimal substructure

MST  $T$ :

(Other edges of  $G$  are not shown.)

Remove any edge  $(u, v) \in T$ .



November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.14

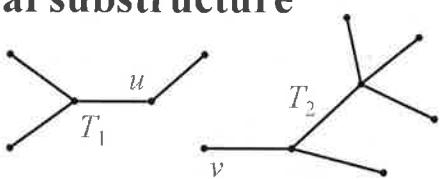


## Optimal substructure

MST  $T$ :

(Other edges of  $G$  are not shown.)

Remove any edge  $(u, v) \in T$ . Then,  $T$  is partitioned into two subtrees  $T_1$  and  $T_2$ .



November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.15



## Optimal substructure

MST  $T$ :

(Other edges of  $G$  are not shown.)

Remove any edge  $(u, v) \in T$ . Then,  $T$  is partitioned into two subtrees  $T_1$  and  $T_2$ .

**Theorem.** The subtree  $T_1$  is an MST of  $G_1 = (V_1, E_1)$ , the subgraph of  $G$  induced by the vertices of  $T_1$ :

$$V_1 = \text{vertices of } T_1,$$

$$E_1 = \{(x, y) \in E : x, y \in V_1\}.$$

Similarly for  $T_2$ .

November 9, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.16

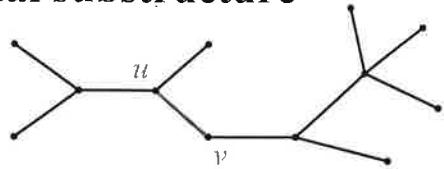


## Proof of optimal substructure

*Proof.* Cut and paste:

$$w(T) = w(u, v) + w(T_1) + w(T_2).$$

If  $T'_1$  were a lower-weight spanning tree than  $T_1$  for  $G_1$ , then  $T' = \{(u, v)\} \cup T'_1 \cup T_2$  would be a lower-weight spanning tree than  $T$  for  $G$ .  $\square$



November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.17



## Proof of optimal substructure

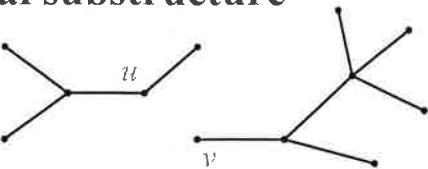
*Proof.* Cut and paste:

$$w(T) = w(u, v) + w(T_1) + w(T_2).$$

If  $T'_1$  were a lower-weight spanning tree than  $T_1$  for  $G_1$ , then  $T' = \{(u, v)\} \cup T'_1 \cup T_2$  would be a lower-weight spanning tree than  $T$  for  $G$ .  $\square$

Do we also have overlapping subproblems?

- Yes.



November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.18



## Proof of optimal substructure

*Proof.* Cut and paste:

$$w(T) = w(u, v) + w(T_1) + w(T_2).$$

If  $T'_1$  were a lower-weight spanning tree than  $T_1$  for  $G_1$ , then  $T' = \{(u, v)\} \cup T'_1 \cup T_2$  would be a lower-weight spanning tree than  $T$  for  $G$ .  $\square$

Do we also have overlapping subproblems?

- Yes.

Great, then dynamic programming may work!

- Yes, but MST exhibits another powerful property which leads to an even more efficient algorithm.

November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.19



## Hallmark for “greedy” algorithms



**Greedy-choice property**  
A locally optimal choice  
is globally optimal.

November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.20



## Hallmark for “greedy” algorithms

**Greedy-choice property**  
A locally optimal choice  
is globally optimal.

**Theorem.** Let  $T$  be the MST of  $G = (V, E)$ , and let  $A \subseteq V$ . Suppose that  $(u, v) \in E$  is the least-weight edge connecting  $A$  to  $V - A$ . Then,  $(u, v) \in T$ .

November 9, 2005

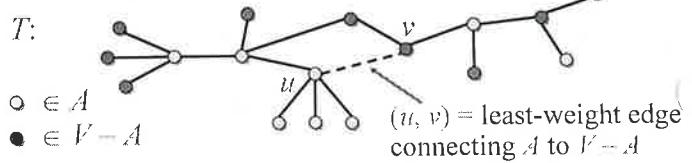
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.21



## Proof of theorem

*Proof.* Suppose  $(u, v) \notin T$ . Cut and paste.



November 9, 2005

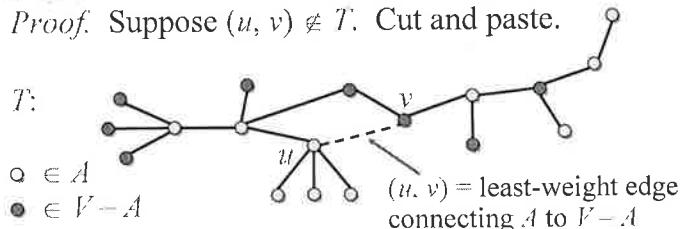
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.22



## Proof of theorem

*Proof.* Suppose  $(u, v) \notin T$ . Cut and paste.



Consider the unique simple path from  $u$  to  $v$  in  $T$ .

November 9, 2005

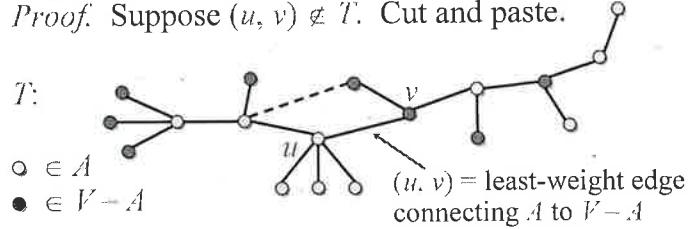
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.23



## Proof of theorem

*Proof.* Suppose  $(u, v) \notin T$ . Cut and paste.



Consider the unique simple path from  $u$  to  $v$  in  $T$ .

Swap  $(u, v)$  with the first edge on this path that connects a vertex in  $A$  to a vertex in  $V - A$ .

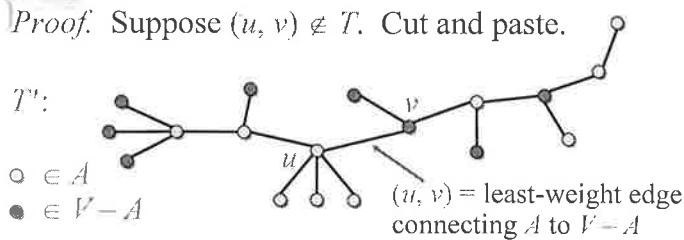
November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.24



## Proof of theorem



Consider the unique simple path from  $u$  to  $v$  in  $T$ .

Swap  $(u, v)$  with the first edge on this path that connects a vertex in  $A$  to a vertex in  $V - A$ .

A lighter-weight spanning tree than  $T$  results.  $\square$

November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.25



## Prim's algorithm

**IDEA:** Maintain  $V - A$  as a priority queue  $Q$ . Key each vertex in  $Q$  with the weight of the least-weight edge connecting it to a vertex in  $A$ .

$Q \leftarrow V$

$\text{key}[v] \leftarrow \infty$  for all  $v \in V$

$\text{key}[s] \leftarrow 0$  for some arbitrary  $s \in V$

**while**  $Q \neq \emptyset$

**do**  $u \leftarrow \text{EXTRACT-MIN}(Q)$

**for** each  $v \in \text{Adj}[u]$

**do if**  $v \in Q$  and  $w(u, v) < \text{key}[v]$

**then**  $\text{key}[v] \leftarrow w(u, v)$   $\triangleright \text{DECREASE-KEY}$

$\pi[v] \leftarrow u$

At the end,  $\{(v, \pi[v])\}$  forms the MST.

November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

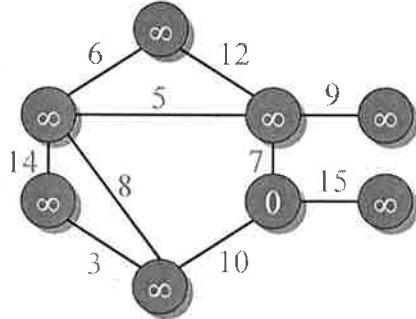
L16.26



## Example of Prim's algorithm

$\circ \in A$

$\bullet \in V - A$



November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

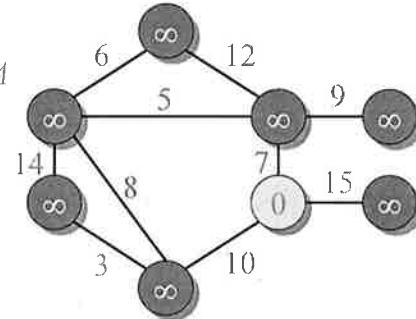
L16.27



## Example of Prim's algorithm

$\circ \in A$

$\bullet \in V - A$



November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

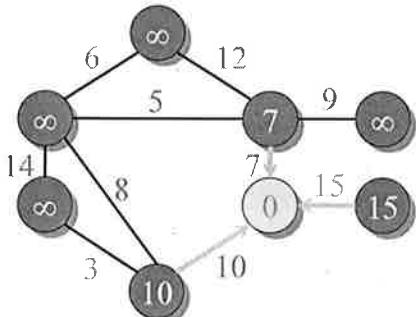
L16.28



## Example of Prim's algorithm

$\circ \in A$

$\bullet \in V - A$



November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

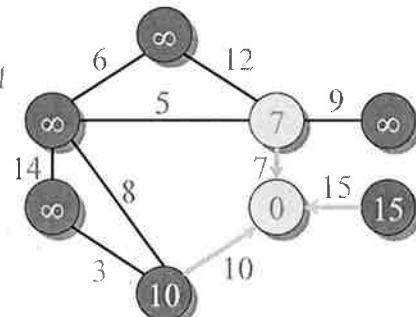
L16.29



## Example of Prim's algorithm

$\circ \in A$

$\bullet \in V - A$



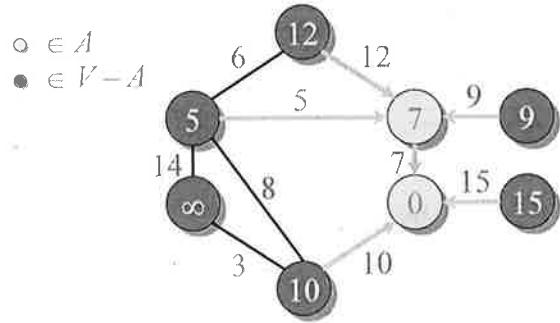
November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.30



## Example of Prim's algorithm



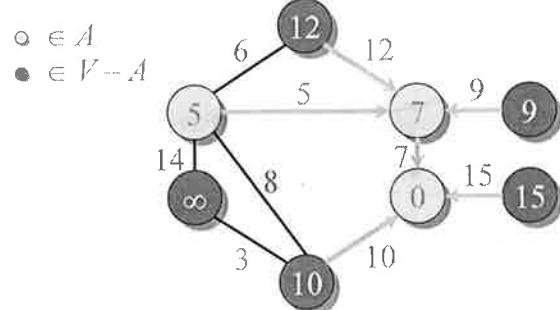
November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.31



## Example of Prim's algorithm



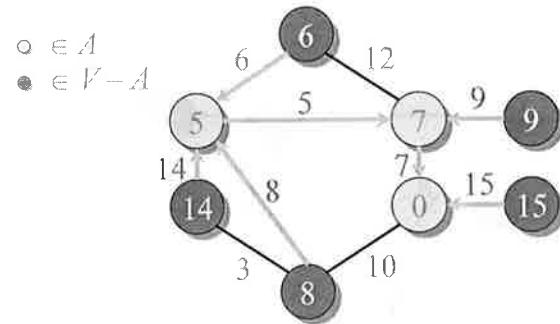
November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.32



## Example of Prim's algorithm



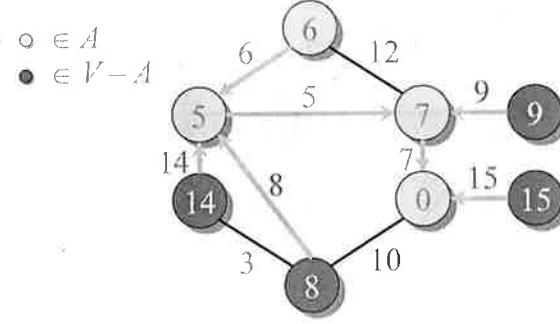
November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.33



## Example of Prim's algorithm



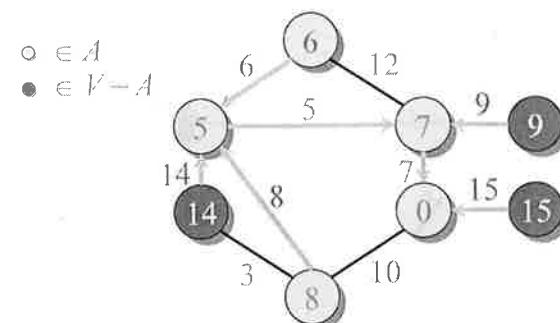
November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.34



## Example of Prim's algorithm



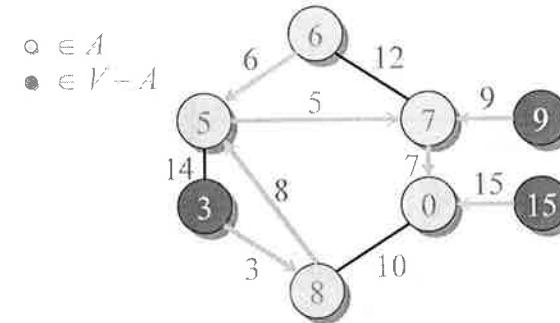
November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.35



## Example of Prim's algorithm



November 9, 2005

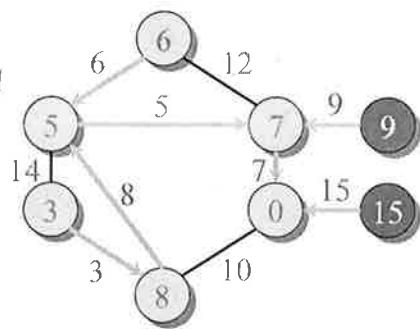
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.36



## Example of Prim's algorithm

$\circ \in A$   
 $\bullet \in V - A$



November 9, 2005

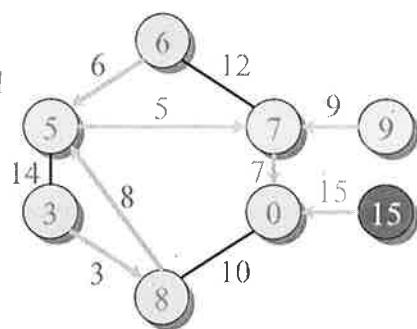
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.37



## Example of Prim's algorithm

$\circ \in A$   
 $\bullet \in V - A$



November 9, 2005

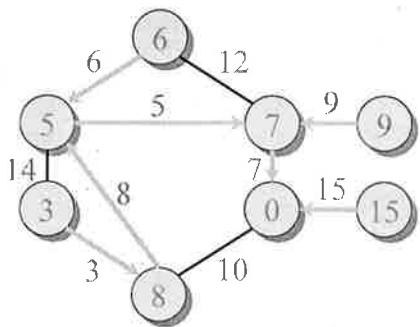
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.38



## Example of Prim's algorithm

$\circ \in A$   
 $\bullet \in V - A$



November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.39



## Analysis of Prim

```

 $Q \leftarrow V$
key[v] $\leftarrow \infty$ for all $v \in V$
key[s] $\leftarrow 0$ for some arbitrary $s \in V$
while $Q \neq \emptyset$
 do $u \leftarrow \text{EXTRACT-MIN}(Q)$
 for each $v \in \text{Adj}[u]$
 do if $v \in Q$ and $w(u, v) < \text{key}[v]$
 then $\text{key}[v] \leftarrow w(u, v)$
 $\pi[v] \leftarrow u$

```

November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.40



## Analysis of Prim

$\Theta(V)$  total

```

 $Q \leftarrow V$
key[v] $\leftarrow \infty$ for all $v \in V$
key[s] $\leftarrow 0$ for some arbitrary $s \in V$
while $Q \neq \emptyset$
 do $u \leftarrow \text{EXTRACT-MIN}(Q)$
 for each $v \in \text{Adj}[u]$
 do if $v \in Q$ and $w(u, v) < \text{key}[v]$
 then $\text{key}[v] \leftarrow w(u, v)$
 $\pi[v] \leftarrow u$

```

November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.41



## Analysis of Prim

$\Theta(V)$  total

```

 $Q \leftarrow V$
key[v] $\leftarrow \infty$ for all $v \in V$
key[s] $\leftarrow 0$ for some arbitrary $s \in V$
while $Q \neq \emptyset$
 do $u \leftarrow \text{EXTRACT-MIN}(Q)$
 for each $v \in \text{Adj}[u]$
 do if $v \in Q$ and $w(u, v) < \text{key}[v]$
 then $\text{key}[v] \leftarrow w(u, v)$
 $\pi[v] \leftarrow u$

```

November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.42



## Analysis of Prim

```

 $\Theta(V)$ total $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} Q \leftarrow V \\ key[v] \leftarrow \infty \text{ for all } v \in V \\ key[s] \leftarrow 0 \text{ for some arbitrary } s \in V \end{array} \right.$
 $|V|$ times $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{while } Q \neq \emptyset \\ \quad \text{do } u \leftarrow \text{EXTRACT-MIN}(Q) \\ \quad \text{for each } v \in Adj[u] \\ \quad \quad \text{do if } v \in Q \text{ and } w(u, v) < key[v] \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{then } key[v] \leftarrow w(u, v) \\ \quad \quad \quad \pi[v] \leftarrow u \end{array} \right.$

```

November 9, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L16.43



## Analysis of Prim

```

 $\Theta(V)$ total $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} Q \leftarrow V \\ key[v] \leftarrow \infty \text{ for all } v \in V \\ key[s] \leftarrow 0 \text{ for some arbitrary } s \in V \end{array} \right.$
 $|V|$ times $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{while } Q \neq \emptyset \\ \quad \text{do } u \leftarrow \text{EXTRACT-MIN}(Q) \\ \quad \text{for each } v \in Adj[u] \\ \quad \quad \text{do if } v \in Q \text{ and } w(u, v) < key[v] \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{then } key[v] \leftarrow w(u, v) \\ \quad \quad \quad \pi[v] \leftarrow u \end{array} \right.$

```

Handshaking Lemma  $\Rightarrow \Theta(E)$  implicit DECREASE-KEY's.

November 9, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L16.44



## Analysis of Prim

```

 $\Theta(V)$ total $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} Q \leftarrow V \\ key[v] \leftarrow \infty \text{ for all } v \in V \\ key[s] \leftarrow 0 \text{ for some arbitrary } s \in V \end{array} \right.$
 $|V|$ times $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{while } Q \neq \emptyset \\ \quad \text{do } u \leftarrow \text{EXTRACT-MIN}(Q) \\ \quad \text{for each } v \in Adj[u] \\ \quad \quad \text{do if } v \in Q \text{ and } w(u, v) < key[v] \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{then } key[v] \leftarrow w(u, v) \\ \quad \quad \quad \pi[v] \leftarrow u \end{array} \right.$

```

Handshaking Lemma  $\Rightarrow \Theta(E)$  implicit DECREASE-KEY's.

Time =  $\Theta(V) \cdot T_{\text{EXTRACT-MIN}} + \Theta(E) \cdot T_{\text{DECREASE-KEY}}$

November 9, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L16.45



## Analysis of Prim (continued)

Time =  $\Theta(V) \cdot T_{\text{EXTRACT-MIN}} + \Theta(E) \cdot T_{\text{DECREASE-KEY}}$

November 9, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L16.46



## Analysis of Prim (continued)

Time =  $\Theta(V) \cdot T_{\text{EXTRACT-MIN}} + \Theta(E) \cdot T_{\text{DECREASE-KEY}}$

| $Q$ | $T_{\text{EXTRACT-MIN}}$ | $T_{\text{DECREASE-KEY}}$ | Total |
|-----|--------------------------|---------------------------|-------|
|-----|--------------------------|---------------------------|-------|



## Analysis of Prim (continued)

Time =  $\Theta(V) \cdot T_{\text{EXTRACT-MIN}} + \Theta(E) \cdot T_{\text{DECREASE-KEY}}$

| $Q$   | $T_{\text{EXTRACT-MIN}}$ | $T_{\text{DECREASE-KEY}}$ | Total    |
|-------|--------------------------|---------------------------|----------|
| array | $O(V)$                   | $O(1)$                    | $O(V^2)$ |

November 9, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L16.47

November 9, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L16.48



## Analysis of Prim (continued)

Time =  $\Theta(V) \cdot T_{\text{EXTRACT-MIN}} + \Theta(E) \cdot T_{\text{DECREASE-KEY}}$

| $Q$         | $T_{\text{EXTRACT-MIN}}$ | $T_{\text{DECREASE-KEY}}$ | Total        |
|-------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|--------------|
| array       | $O(V)$                   | $O(1)$                    | $O(V^2)$     |
| binary heap | $O(\lg V)$               | $O(\lg V)$                | $O(E \lg V)$ |

November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.49



## Analysis of Prim (continued)

Time =  $\Theta(V) \cdot T_{\text{EXTRACT-MIN}} + \Theta(E) \cdot T_{\text{DECREASE-KEY}}$

| $Q$            | $T_{\text{EXTRACT-MIN}}$ | $T_{\text{DECREASE-KEY}}$ | Total                          |
|----------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| array          | $O(V)$                   | $O(1)$                    | $O(V^2)$                       |
| binary heap    | $O(\lg V)$               | $O(\lg V)$                | $O(E \lg V)$                   |
| Fibonacci heap | $O(\lg V)$<br>amortized  | $O(1)$<br>amortized       | $O(E + V \lg V)$<br>worst case |

November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.50



## MST algorithms

Kruskal's algorithm (see CLRS):

- Uses the *disjoint-set data structure* (Lecture 10).
- Running time =  $O(E \lg V)$ .

November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L16.51



## MST algorithms

Kruskal's algorithm (see CLRS):

- Uses the *disjoint-set data structure* (Lecture 10).
- Running time =  $O(E \lg V)$ .

Best to date:

- Karger, Klein, and Tarjan [1993].
- Randomized algorithm.
- $O(V + E)$  expected time.

November 9, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

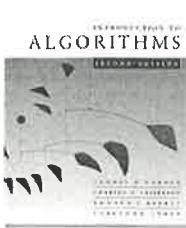
L16.52





# Introduction to Algorithms

6.046J/18.401J



## LECTURE 17

### Shortest Paths I

- Properties of shortest paths
- Dijkstra's algorithm
- Correctness
- Analysis
- Breadth-first search

Prof. Erik Demaine

November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.1



## Paths in graphs

Consider a digraph  $G = (V, E)$  with edge-weight function  $w : E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ . The **weight** of path  $p = v_1 \rightarrow v_2 \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow v_k$  is defined to be

$$w(p) = \sum_{i=1}^{k-1} w(v_i, v_{i+1}).$$

November 14, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.2

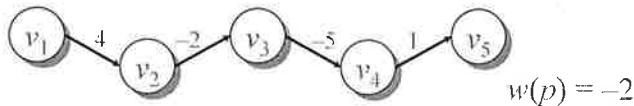


## Paths in graphs

Consider a digraph  $G = (V, E)$  with edge-weight function  $w : E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ . The **weight** of path  $p = v_1 \rightarrow v_2 \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow v_k$  is defined to be

$$w(p) = \sum_{i=1}^{k-1} w(v_i, v_{i+1}).$$

Example:



November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.3



## Shortest paths

A **shortest path** from  $u$  to  $v$  is a path of minimum weight from  $u$  to  $v$ . The **shortest-path weight** from  $u$  to  $v$  is defined as

$$\delta(u, v) = \min \{w(p) : p \text{ is a path from } u \text{ to } v\}.$$

*no negative loop*

Note:  $\delta(u, v) = \infty$  if no path from  $u$  to  $v$  exists.

November 14, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.4



## Optimal substructure

**Theorem.** A subpath of a shortest path is a shortest path.

November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.5



## Optimal substructure

**Theorem.** A subpath of a shortest path is a shortest path.

*Proof.* Cut and paste:



November 14, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

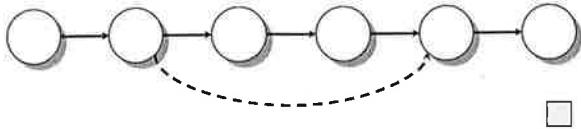
L17.6



## Optimal substructure

**Theorem.** A subpath of a shortest path is a shortest path.

*Proof.* Cut and paste:



November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.7



## Triangle inequality

**Theorem.** For all  $u, v, x \in V$ , we have  
 $\delta(u, v) \leq \delta(u, x) + \delta(x, v)$ .

November 14, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

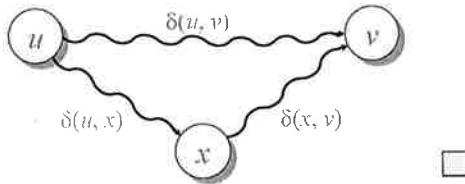
L17.8



## Triangle inequality

**Theorem.** For all  $u, v, x \in V$ , we have  
 $\delta(u, v) \leq \delta(u, x) + \delta(x, v)$ .

*Proof.*



November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.9



## Well-definedness of shortest paths

If a graph  $G$  contains a negative-weight cycle, then some shortest paths may not exist.

November 14, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

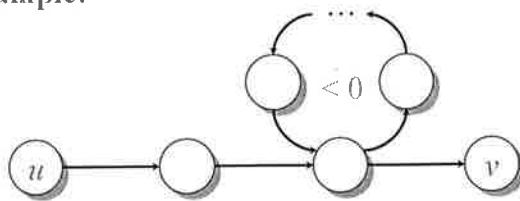
L17.10



## Well-definedness of shortest paths

If a graph  $G$  contains a negative-weight cycle, then some shortest paths may not exist.

**Example:**



November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.11



## Single-source shortest paths

**Problem.** From a given source vertex  $s \in V$ , find the shortest-path weights  $\delta(s, v)$  for all  $v \in V$ .

If all edge weights  $w(u, v)$  are *nonnegative*, all shortest-path weights must exist.

**IDEA:** Greedy.

1. Maintain a set  $S$  of vertices whose shortest-path distances from  $s$  are known.
2. At each step add to  $S$  the vertex  $v \in V - S$  whose distance estimate from  $s$  is minimal.
3. Update the distance estimates of vertices adjacent to  $v$ .

November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.12



## Dijkstra's algorithm

```

 $d[s] \leftarrow 0$
for each $v \in V - \{s\}$
 do $d[v] \leftarrow \infty$
 $S \leftarrow \emptyset$
 $Q \leftarrow V$ $\triangleright Q$ is a priority queue maintaining $V - S$

```

November 14, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L17.13



## Dijkstra's algorithm

```

 $d[s] \leftarrow 0$
for each $v \in V - \{s\}$
 do $d[v] \leftarrow \infty$
 $S \leftarrow \emptyset$
 $Q \leftarrow V$ $\triangleright Q$ is a priority queue maintaining $V - S$
while $Q \neq \emptyset$
 do $u \leftarrow \text{EXTRACT-MIN}(Q)$
 $S \leftarrow S \cup \{u\}$
 for each $v \in \text{Adj}[u]$
 do if $d[v] > d[u] + w(u, v)$
 then $d[v] \leftarrow d[u] + w(u, v)$

```

November 14, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L17.14



## Dijkstra's algorithm

```

 $d[s] \leftarrow 0$
for each $v \in V - \{s\}$
 do $d[v] \leftarrow \infty$
 $S \leftarrow \emptyset$
 $Q \leftarrow V$ $\triangleright Q$ is a priority queue maintaining $V - S$
while $Q \neq \emptyset$
 do $u \leftarrow \text{EXTRACT-MIN}(Q)$
 $S \leftarrow S \cup \{u\}$
 for each $v \in \text{Adj}[u]$
 do if $d[v] > d[u] + w(u, v)$ relaxation
 then $d[v] \leftarrow d[u] + w(u, v)$ step
 Implicit DECREASE-KEY

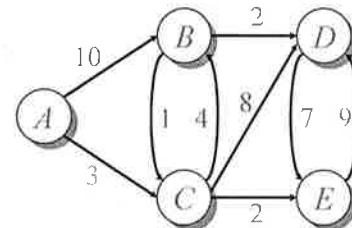
```

November 14, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L17.15



## Example of Dijkstra's algorithm

Graph with nonnegative edge weights:

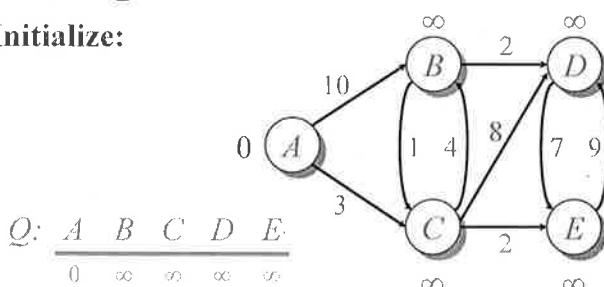


November 14, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L17.16



## Example of Dijkstra's algorithm

**Initialize:**

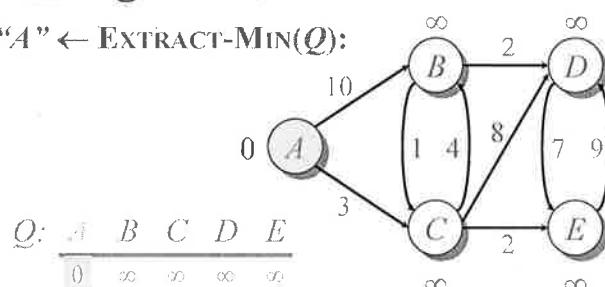


November 14, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L17.17



## Example of Dijkstra's algorithm

“A”  $\leftarrow \text{EXTRACT-MIN}(Q)$ :

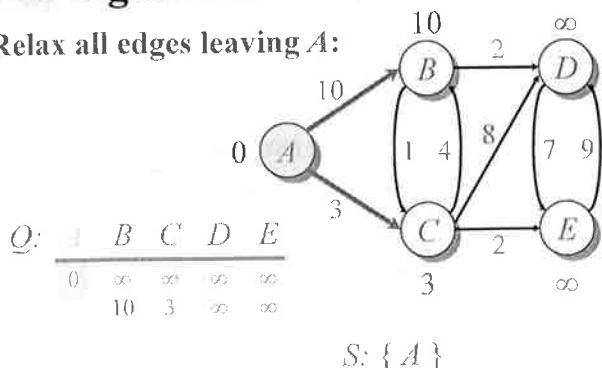


November 14, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L17.18



## Example of Dijkstra's algorithm

Relax all edges leaving  $A$ :



| $Q:$ | $A$ | $B$      | $C$      | $D$      | $E$      |
|------|-----|----------|----------|----------|----------|
|      | 0   | $\infty$ | $\infty$ | $\infty$ | $\infty$ |
|      | 10  | 3        | $\infty$ | $\infty$ | $\infty$ |

$S: \{ A \}$

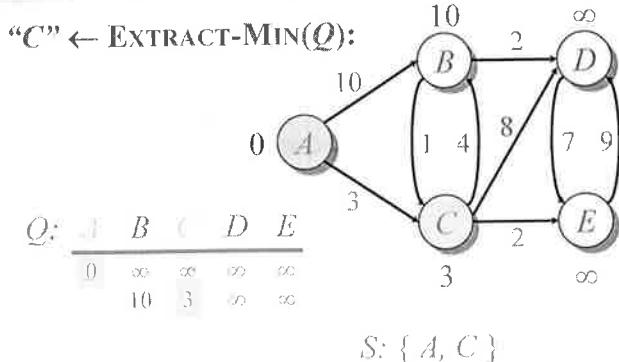
November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.19

## Example of Dijkstra's algorithm

"C"  $\leftarrow$  EXTRACT-MIN( $Q$ ):



| $Q:$ | $A$ | $B$      | $C$      | $D$      | $E$      |
|------|-----|----------|----------|----------|----------|
|      | 0   | $\infty$ | $\infty$ | $\infty$ | $\infty$ |
|      | 10  | 3        | $\infty$ | $\infty$ | $\infty$ |

$S: \{ A, C \}$

November 14, 2005

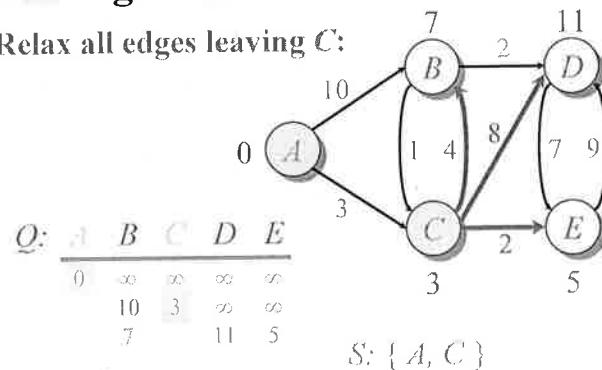
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.20



## Example of Dijkstra's algorithm

Relax all edges leaving  $C$ :



| $Q:$ | $A$ | $B$      | $C$      | $D$      | $E$      |
|------|-----|----------|----------|----------|----------|
|      | 0   | $\infty$ | $\infty$ | $\infty$ | $\infty$ |
|      | 10  | 3        | $\infty$ | $\infty$ | $\infty$ |
|      | 7   | 11       | 3        | $\infty$ | 5        |

$S: \{ A, C \}$

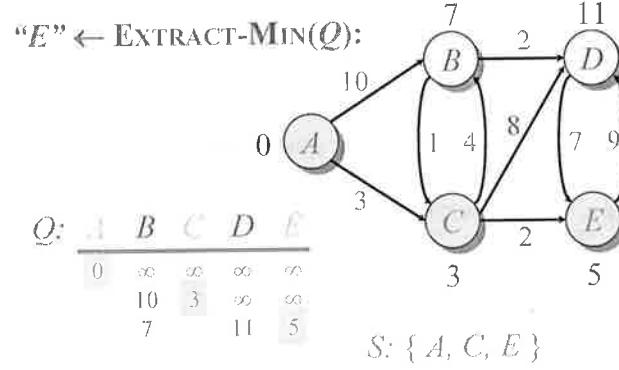
November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.21

## Example of Dijkstra's algorithm

"E"  $\leftarrow$  EXTRACT-MIN( $Q$ ):



| $Q:$ | $A$ | $B$      | $C$      | $D$      | $E$      |
|------|-----|----------|----------|----------|----------|
|      | 0   | $\infty$ | $\infty$ | $\infty$ | $\infty$ |
|      | 10  | 3        | $\infty$ | $\infty$ | $\infty$ |
|      | 7   | 11       | 3        | $\infty$ | 5        |

$S: \{ A, C, E \}$

November 14, 2005

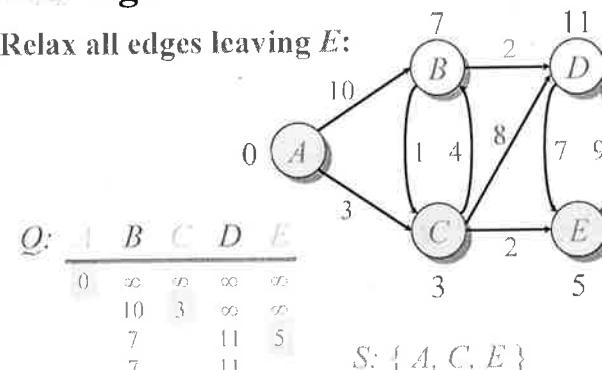
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.22



## Example of Dijkstra's algorithm

Relax all edges leaving  $E$ :



| $Q:$ | $A$ | $B$      | $C$      | $D$      | $E$      |
|------|-----|----------|----------|----------|----------|
|      | 0   | $\infty$ | $\infty$ | $\infty$ | $\infty$ |
|      | 10  | 3        | $\infty$ | $\infty$ | $\infty$ |
|      | 7   | 11       | 3        | $\infty$ | 5        |

$S: \{ A, C, E \}$

November 14, 2005

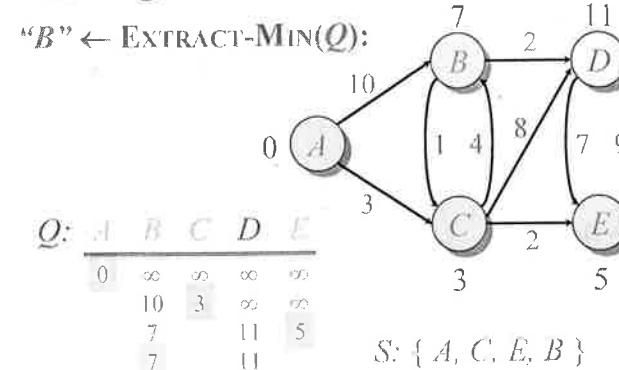
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.23



## Example of Dijkstra's algorithm

"B"  $\leftarrow$  EXTRACT-MIN( $Q$ ):



| $Q:$ | $A$ | $B$      | $C$      | $D$      | $E$      |
|------|-----|----------|----------|----------|----------|
|      | 0   | $\infty$ | $\infty$ | $\infty$ | $\infty$ |
|      | 10  | 3        | $\infty$ | $\infty$ | $\infty$ |
|      | 7   | 11       | 3        | $\infty$ | 5        |

$S: \{ A, C, E, B \}$

November 14, 2005

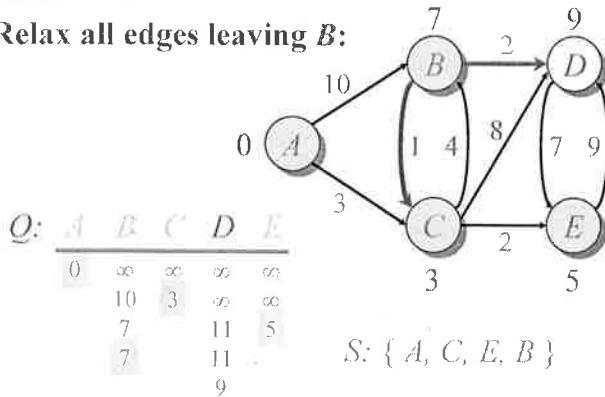
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.24



## Example of Dijkstra's algorithm

Relax all edges leaving  $B$ :



November 14, 2005

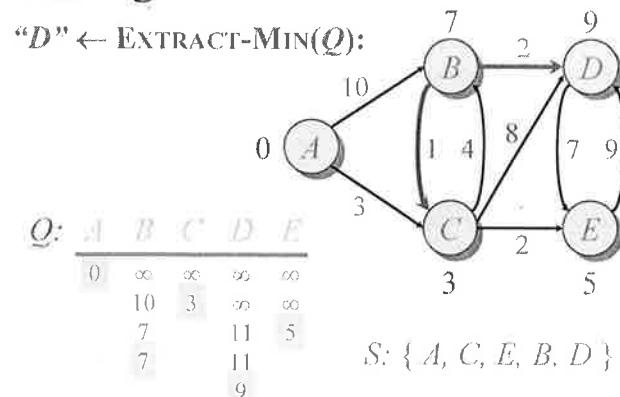
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.25



## Example of Dijkstra's algorithm

$"D" \leftarrow \text{EXTRACT-MIN}(Q)$ :



November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.26



## Correctness — Part I

**Lemma.** Initializing  $d[s] \leftarrow 0$  and  $d[v] \leftarrow \infty$  for all  $v \in V - \{s\}$  establishes  $d[v] \geq \delta(s, v)$  for all  $v \in V$ , and this invariant is maintained over any sequence of relaxation steps.

November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.27



## Correctness — Part I

**Lemma.** Initializing  $d[s] \leftarrow 0$  and  $d[v] \leftarrow \infty$  for all  $v \in V - \{s\}$  establishes  $d[v] \geq \delta(s, v)$  for all  $v \in V$ , and this invariant is maintained over any sequence of relaxation steps.

*Proof.* Suppose not. Let  $v$  be the first vertex for which  $d[v] < \delta(s, v)$ , and let  $u$  be the vertex that caused  $d[v]$  to change:  $d[v] = d[u] + w(u, v)$ . Then,

|                                    |                               |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| $d[v] < \delta(s, v)$              | supposition                   |
| $\leq \delta(s, u) + \delta(u, v)$ | triangle inequality           |
| $\leq \delta(s, u) + w(u, v)$      | sh. path $\leq$ specific path |
| $\leq d[u] + w(u, v)$              | $v$ is first violation        |

Contradiction.  $\square$

November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.28



## Correctness — Part II

**Lemma.** Let  $u$  be  $v$ 's predecessor on a shortest path from  $s$  to  $v$ . Then, if  $d[u] = \delta(s, u)$  and edge  $(u, v)$  is relaxed, we have  $d[v] = \delta(s, v)$  after the relaxation.

November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.29



## Correctness — Part II

**Lemma.** Let  $u$  be  $v$ 's predecessor on a shortest path from  $s$  to  $v$ . Then, if  $d[u] = \delta(s, u)$  and edge  $(u, v)$  is relaxed, we have  $d[v] = \delta(s, v)$  after the relaxation.

*Proof.* Observe that  $\delta(s, v) = \delta(s, u) + w(u, v)$ . Suppose that  $d[v] > \delta(s, v)$  before the relaxation. (Otherwise, we're done.) Then, the test  $d[v] > d[u] + w(u, v)$  succeeds, because  $d[v] > \delta(s, v) = \delta(s, u) + w(u, v) = d[u] + w(u, v)$ , and the algorithm sets  $d[v] = d[u] + w(u, v) = \delta(s, v)$ .  $\square$

November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.30



## Correctness — Part III

**Theorem.** Dijkstra's algorithm terminates with  $d[v] = \delta(s, v)$  for all  $v \in V$ .

November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

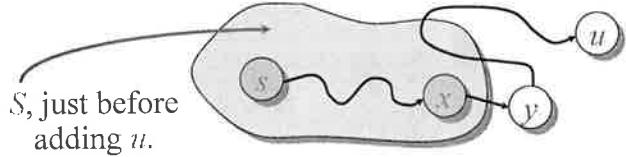
L17.31



## Correctness — Part III

**Theorem.** Dijkstra's algorithm terminates with  $d[v] = \delta(s, v)$  for all  $v \in V$ .

*Proof.* It suffices to show that  $d[v] = \delta(s, v)$  for every  $v \in V$  when  $v$  is added to  $S$ . Suppose  $u$  is the first vertex added to  $S$  for which  $d[u] > \delta(s, u)$ . Let  $y$  be the first vertex in  $V - S$  along a shortest path from  $s$  to  $u$ , and let  $x$  be its predecessor:



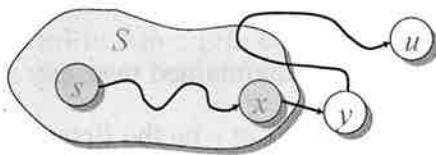
November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.32



## Correctness — Part III (continued)



Since  $u$  is the first vertex violating the claimed invariant, we have  $d[x] = \delta(s, x)$ . When  $x$  was added to  $S$ , the edge  $(x, y)$  was relaxed, which implies that  $d[y] = \delta(s, y) \leq \delta(s, u) < d[u]$ . But,  $d[u] \leq d[y]$  by our choice of  $u$ . Contradiction.  $\square$

November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.33



## Analysis of Dijkstra

```
while Q ≠ ∅
 do u ← EXTRACT-MIN(Q)
 S ← S ∪ {u}
 for each v ∈ Adj[u]
 do if d[v] > d[u] + w(u, v)
 then d[v] ← d[u] + w(u, v)
```

November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.34



## Analysis of Dijkstra

```
while Q ≠ ∅
 do u ← EXTRACT-MIN(Q)
 S ← S ∪ {u}
 for each v ∈ Adj[u]
 do if d[v] > d[u] + w(u, v)
 then d[v] ← d[u] + w(u, v)
```

$|V|$  times

{



## Analysis of Dijkstra

```
while Q ≠ ∅
 do u ← EXTRACT-MIN(Q)
 S ← S ∪ {u}
 for each v ∈ Adj[u]
 do if d[v] > d[u] + w(u, v)
 then d[v] ← d[u] + w(u, v)
```

$|V|$  times

$degree(u)$  times

November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.35

November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.36



## Analysis of Dijkstra

```

while $Q \neq \emptyset$
 do $u \leftarrow \text{EXTRACT-MIN}(Q)$
 $S \leftarrow S \cup \{u\}$
 for each $v \in \text{Adj}[u]$
 do if $d[v] > d[u] + w(u, v)$
 then $d[v] \leftarrow d[u] + w(u, v)$

```

Handshaking Lemma  $\Rightarrow \Theta(E)$  implicit DECREASE-KEY's.

November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.37

ALGORITHMS



## Analysis of Dijkstra (continued)

Time =  $\Theta(V) \cdot T_{\text{EXTRACT-MIN}} + \Theta(E) \cdot T_{\text{DECREASE-KEY}}$

| $Q$ | $T_{\text{EXTRACT-MIN}}$ | $T_{\text{DECREASE-KEY}}$ | Total |
|-----|--------------------------|---------------------------|-------|
|-----|--------------------------|---------------------------|-------|

November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.39



## Analysis of Dijkstra (continued)

Time =  $\Theta(V) \cdot T_{\text{EXTRACT-MIN}} + \Theta(E) \cdot T_{\text{DECREASE-KEY}}$

| $Q$         | $T_{\text{EXTRACT-MIN}}$ | $T_{\text{DECREASE-KEY}}$ | Total        |
|-------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|--------------|
| array       | $O(V)$                   | $O(1)$                    | $O(V^2)$     |
| binary heap | $O(\lg V)$               | $O(\lg V)$                | $O(E \lg V)$ |

November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.41

ALGORITHMS



## Analysis of Dijkstra

```

while $Q \neq \emptyset$
 do $u \leftarrow \text{EXTRACT-MIN}(Q)$
 $S \leftarrow S \cup \{u\}$
 for each $v \in \text{Adj}[u]$
 do if $d[v] > d[u] + w(u, v)$
 then $d[v] \leftarrow d[u] + w(u, v)$

```

Handshaking Lemma  $\Rightarrow \Theta(E)$  implicit DECREASE-KEY's.

Time =  $\Theta(V T_{\text{EXTRACT-MIN}} + E T_{\text{DECREASE-KEY}})$

**Note:** Same formula as in the analysis of Prim's minimum spanning tree algorithm.

November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.38

ALGORITHMS



## Analysis of Dijkstra (continued)

Time =  $\Theta(V) \cdot T_{\text{EXTRACT-MIN}} + \Theta(E) \cdot T_{\text{DECREASE-KEY}}$

| $Q$   | $T_{\text{EXTRACT-MIN}}$ | $T_{\text{DECREASE-KEY}}$ | Total    |
|-------|--------------------------|---------------------------|----------|
| array | $O(V)$                   | $O(1)$                    | $O(V^2)$ |

November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.40

ALGORITHMS



## Analysis of Dijkstra (continued)

Time =  $\Theta(V) \cdot T_{\text{EXTRACT-MIN}} + \Theta(E) \cdot T_{\text{DECREASE-KEY}}$

| $Q$            | $T_{\text{EXTRACT-MIN}}$ | $T_{\text{DECREASE-KEY}}$ | Total                          |
|----------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| array          | $O(V)$                   | $O(1)$                    | $O(V^2)$                       |
| binary heap    | $O(\lg V)$               | $O(\lg V)$                | $O(E \lg V)$                   |
| Fibonacci heap | $O(\lg V)$<br>amortized  | $O(1)$<br>amortized       | $O(E + V \lg V)$<br>worst case |

November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.42

ALGORITHMS



## Unweighted graphs

Suppose that  $w(u, v) = 1$  for all  $(u, v) \in E$ .  
Can Dijkstra's algorithm be improved?

November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.43



## Unweighted graphs

Suppose that  $w(u, v) = 1$  for all  $(u, v) \in E$ .  
Can Dijkstra's algorithm be improved?  

- Use a simple FIFO queue instead of a priority queue.

November 14, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.44



## Unweighted graphs

Suppose that  $w(u, v) = 1$  for all  $(u, v) \in E$ .  
Can Dijkstra's algorithm be improved?  

- Use a simple FIFO queue instead of a priority queue.

### Breadth-first search

```

while Q ≠ ∅
 do u ← DEQUEUE(Q)
 for each v ∈ Adj[u]
 do if d[v] = ∞
 then d[v] ← d[u] + 1
 ENQUEUE(Q, v)

```

November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.45



## Unweighted graphs

Suppose that  $w(u, v) = 1$  for all  $(u, v) \in E$ .  
Can Dijkstra's algorithm be improved?  

- Use a simple FIFO queue instead of a priority queue.

### Breadth-first search

```

while Q ≠ ∅
 do u ← DEQUEUE(Q)
 for each v ∈ Adj[u]
 do if d[v] = ∞
 then d[v] ← d[u] + 1
 ENQUEUE(Q, v)

```

**Analysis:** Time =  $O(V + E)$ .

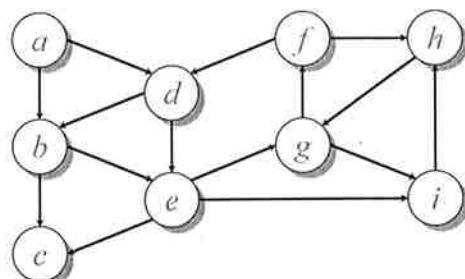
November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.46



## Example of breadth-first search

 $Q:$ 

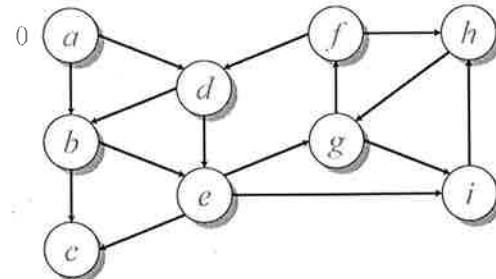
November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.47



## Example of breadth-first search



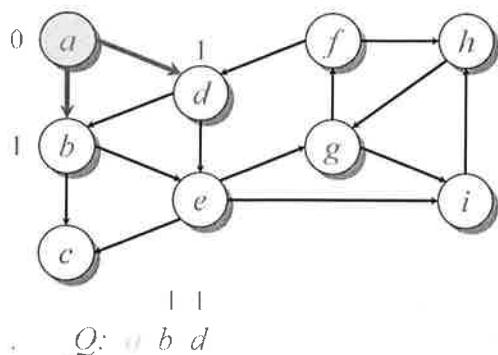
November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.48



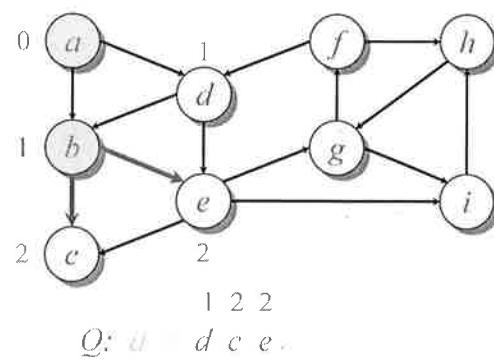
## Example of breadth-first search



November 14, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L17.49



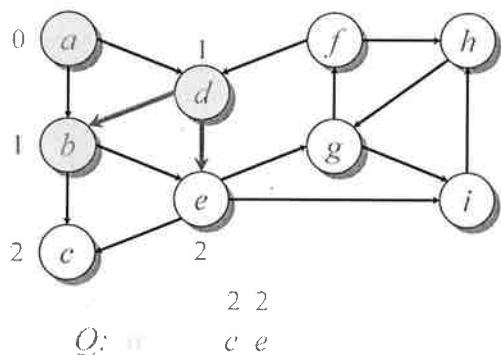
## Example of breadth-first search



November 14, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L17.50



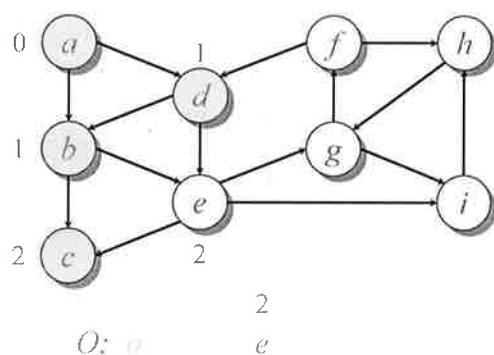
## Example of breadth-first search



November 14, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L17.51



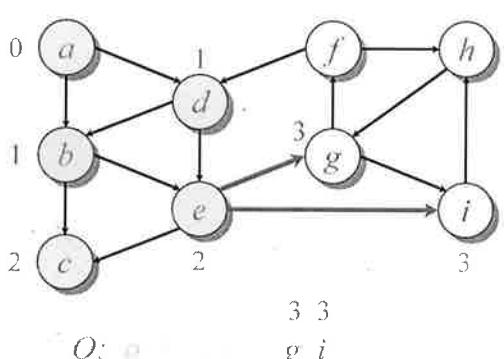
## Example of breadth-first search



November 14, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L17.52



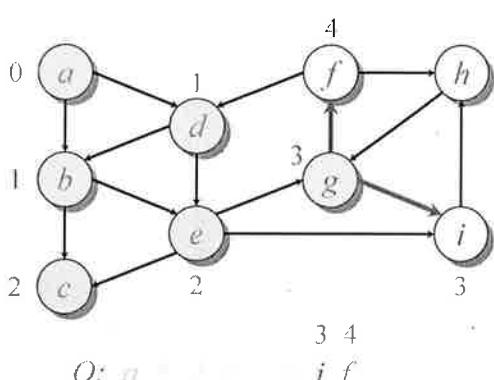
## Example of breadth-first search



November 14, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L17.53



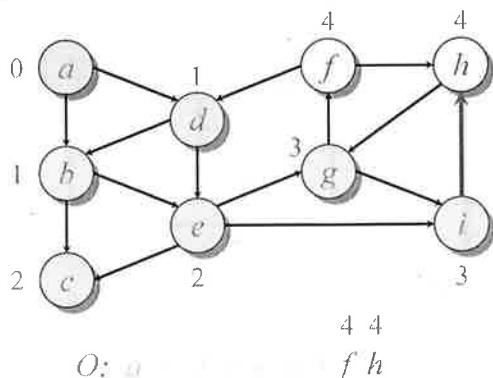
## Example of breadth-first search



November 14, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L17.54



## Example of breadth-first search



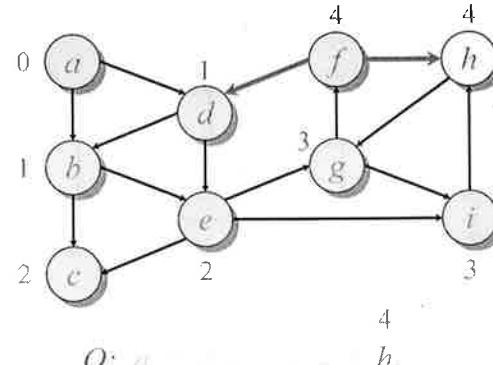
November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.55



## Example of breadth-first search



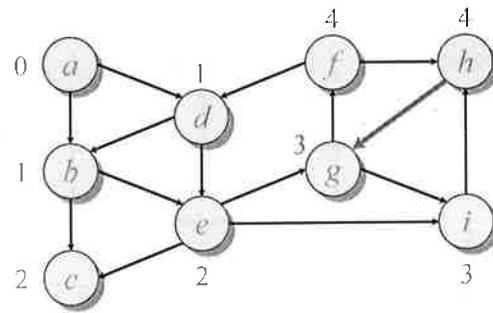
November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.56



## Example of breadth-first search



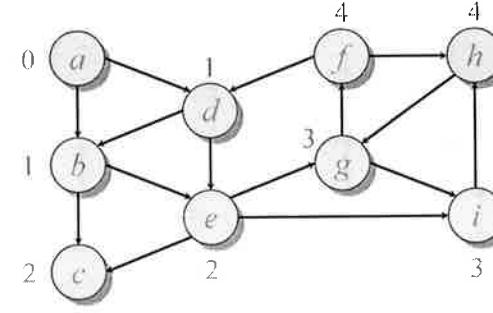
November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.57



## Example of breadth-first search



November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.58



## Correctness of BFS

```

while $Q \neq \emptyset$
 do $u \leftarrow \text{DEQUEUE}(Q)$
 for each $v \in \text{Adj}[u]$
 do if $d[v] = \infty$
 then $d[v] \leftarrow d[u] + 1$
 ENQUEUE(Q, v)

```

### Key idea:

The FIFO  $Q$  in breadth-first search mimics the priority queue  $Q$  in Dijkstra.

- **Invariant:**  $v$  comes after  $u$  in  $Q$  implies that  $d[v] = d[u]$  or  $d[v] = d[u] + 1$ .

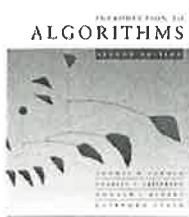
November 14, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L17.59

# Introduction to Algorithms

6.046J/18.401J



## LECTURE 18

### Shortest Paths II

- Bellman-Ford algorithm
- Linear programming and difference constraints
- VLSI layout compaction

Prof. Erik Demaine

November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.1

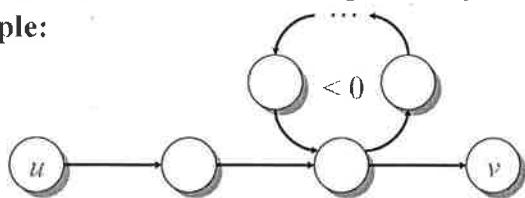
ALGORITHMS



## Negative-weight cycles

**Recall:** If a graph  $G = (V, E)$  contains a negative-weight cycle, then some shortest paths may not exist.

**Example:**



November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

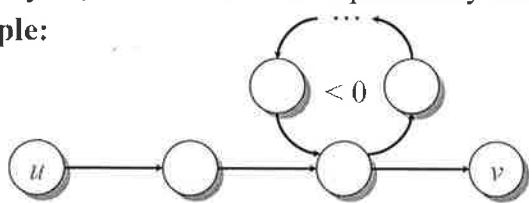
L18.2



## Negative-weight cycles

**Recall:** If a graph  $G = (V, E)$  contains a negative-weight cycle, then some shortest paths may not exist.

**Example:**



**Bellman-Ford algorithm:** Finds all shortest-path lengths from a *source*  $s \in V$  to all  $v \in V$  or determines that a negative-weight cycle exists.

November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.3



## Bellman-Ford algorithm

```

 $d[s] \leftarrow 0$
for each $v \in V - \{s\}$ } initialization
 do $d[v] \leftarrow \infty$

for $i \leftarrow 1$ to $|V| - 1$
 do for each edge $(u, v) \in E$
 do if $d[v] > d[u] + w(u, v)$
 then $d[v] \leftarrow d[u] + w(u, v)$ } relaxation step
 for each edge $(u, v) \in E$
 do if $d[v] > d[u] + w(u, v)$
 then report that a negative-weight cycle exists
At the end, $d[v] = \delta(s, v)$, if no negative-weight cycles.
Time = $O(VE)$.

```

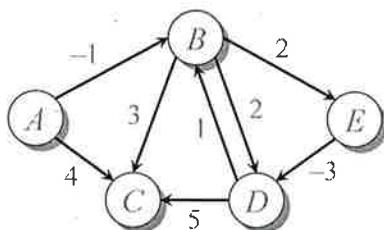
November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.4



## Example of Bellman-Ford



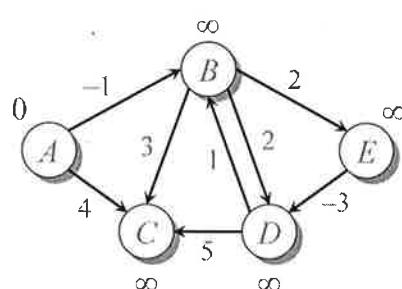
November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.5



## Example of Bellman-Ford



Initialization.

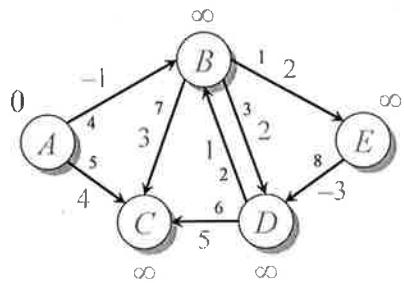
November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.6



## Example of Bellman-Ford



Order of edge relaxation.

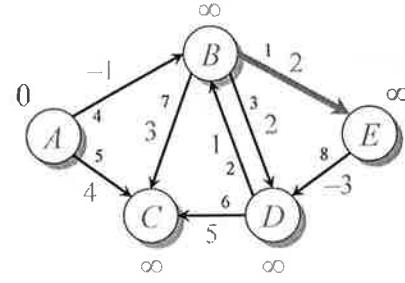
November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.7



## Example of Bellman-Ford



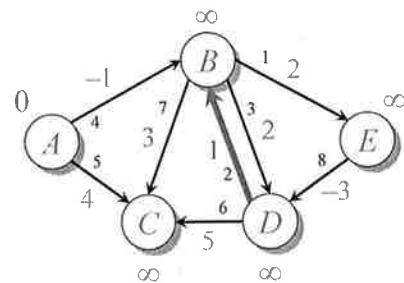
November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.8



## Example of Bellman-Ford



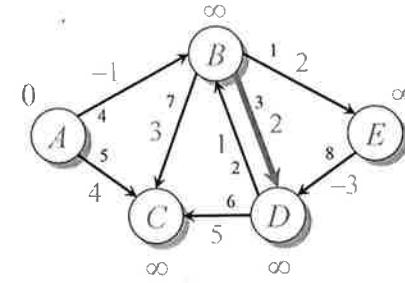
November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.9



## Example of Bellman-Ford



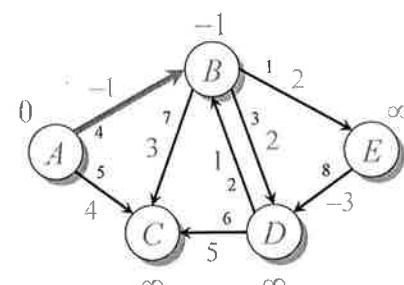
November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.10



## Example of Bellman-Ford



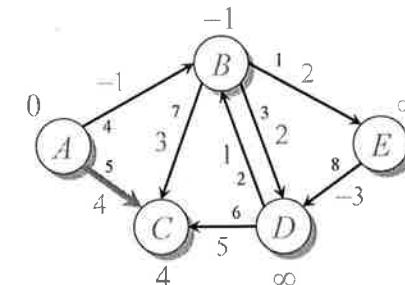
November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.11



## Example of Bellman-Ford



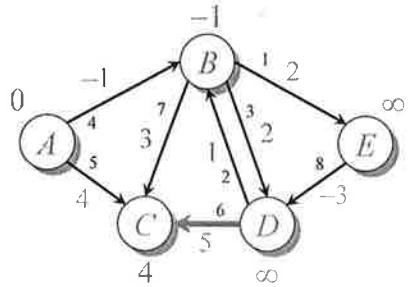
November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.12



## Example of Bellman-Ford

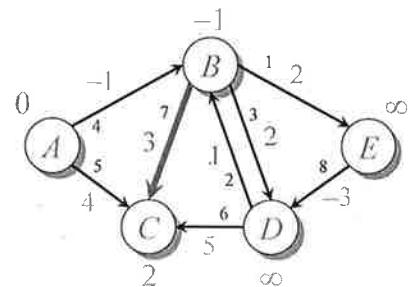


November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.13

## Example of Bellman-Ford



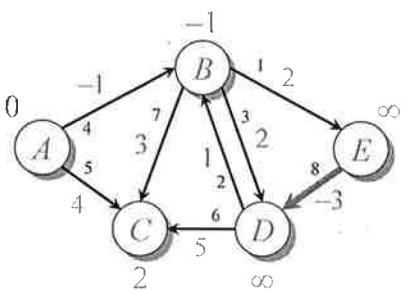
November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.14



## Example of Bellman-Ford

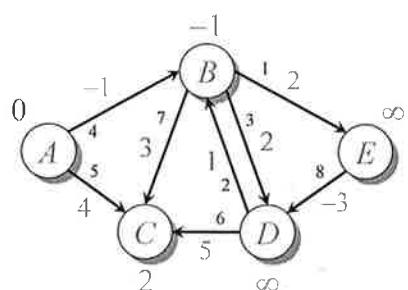


November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.15

## Example of Bellman-Ford



End of pass 1.

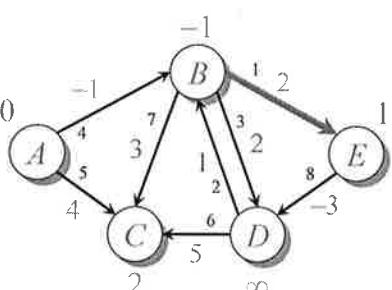
November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.16



## Example of Bellman-Ford



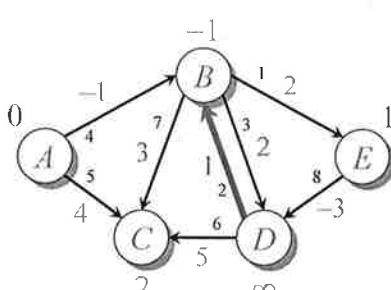
November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.17



## Example of Bellman-Ford



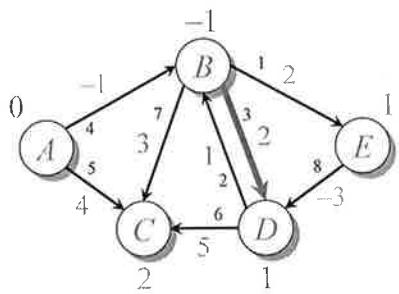
November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.18



## Example of Bellman-Ford



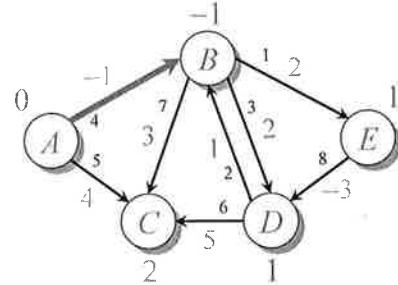
November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.19



## Example of Bellman-Ford



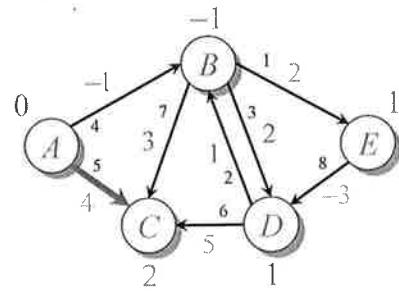
November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.20



## Example of Bellman-Ford



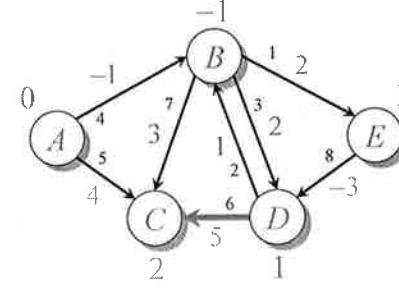
November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.21



## Example of Bellman-Ford



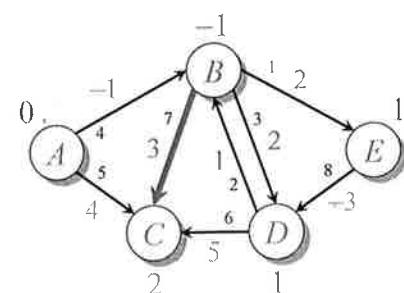
November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.22



## Example of Bellman-Ford



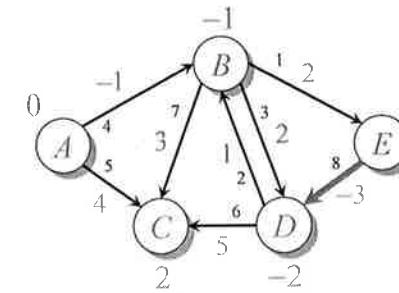
November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.23



## Example of Bellman-Ford



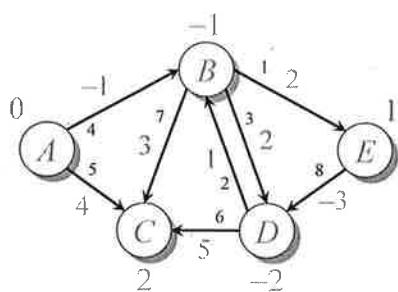
November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.24



## Example of Bellman-Ford



End of pass 2 (and 3 and 4).

November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.25



## Correctness

**Theorem.** If  $G = (V, E)$  contains no negative-weight cycles, then after the Bellman-Ford algorithm executes,  $d[v] = \delta(s, v)$  for all  $v \in V$ .

November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

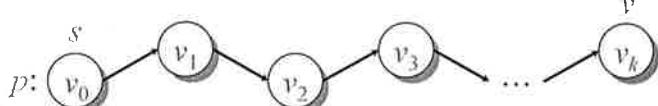
L18.26



## Correctness

**Theorem.** If  $G = (V, E)$  contains no negative-weight cycles, then after the Bellman-Ford algorithm executes,  $d[v] = \delta(s, v)$  for all  $v \in V$ .

*Proof.* Let  $v \in V$  be any vertex, and consider a shortest path  $p$  from  $s$  to  $v$  with the minimum number of edges.



Since  $p$  is a shortest path, we have

$$\delta(s, v_i) = \delta(s, v_{i-1}) + w(v_{i-1}, v_i).$$

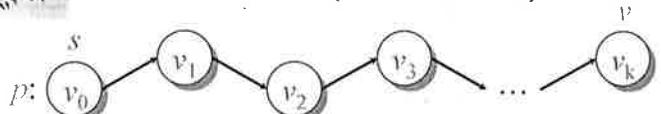
November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.27



## Correctness (continued)



Initially,  $d[v_0] = 0 = \delta(s, v_0)$ , and  $d[v_0]$  is unchanged by subsequent relaxations (because of the lemma from Lecture 14 that  $d[v] \geq \delta(s, v)$ ).

- After 1 pass through  $E$ , we have  $d[v_1] = \delta(s, v_1)$ .
  - After 2 passes through  $E$ , we have  $d[v_2] = \delta(s, v_2)$ .
  - ⋮
  - After  $k$  passes through  $E$ , we have  $d[v_k] = \delta(s, v_k)$ .
- Since  $G$  contains no negative-weight cycles,  $p$  is simple. Longest simple path has  $\leq |V| - 1$  edges.  $\square$

November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.28



## Detection of negative-weight cycles

**Corollary.** If a value  $d[v]$  fails to converge after  $|V| - 1$  passes, there exists a negative-weight cycle in  $G$  reachable from  $s$ .  $\square$

November 16, 2005

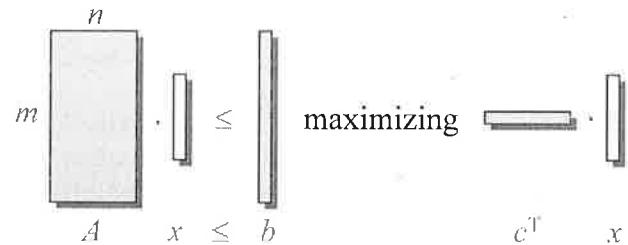
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.29



## Linear programming

Let  $A$  be an  $m \times n$  matrix,  $b$  be an  $m$ -vector, and  $c$  be an  $n$ -vector. Find an  $n$ -vector  $x$  that maximizes  $c^T x$  subject to  $Ax \leq b$ , or determine that no such solution exists.



November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.30



## Linear-programming algorithms

### Algorithms for the general problem

- Simplex methods — practical, but worst-case exponential time.
- Interior-point methods — polynomial time and competes with simplex.

November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.31



## Linear-programming algorithms

### Algorithms for the general problem

- Simplex methods — practical, but worst-case exponential time.
- Interior-point methods — polynomial time and competes with simplex.

**Feasibility problem:** No optimization criterion. Just find  $x$  such that  $Ax \leq b$ .

- In general, just as hard as ordinary LP.

November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.32



## Solving a system of difference constraints

Linear programming where each row of  $A$  contains exactly one 1, one  $-1$ , and the rest 0's.

### Example:

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} x_1 - x_2 \leq 3 \\ x_2 - x_3 \leq -2 \\ x_1 - x_3 \leq 2 \end{array} \right\} x_j - x_i \leq w_{ij}$$

November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.33



## Solving a system of difference constraints

Linear programming where each row of  $A$  contains exactly one 1, one  $-1$ , and the rest 0's.

### Example:

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} x_1 - x_2 \leq 3 \\ x_2 - x_3 \leq -2 \\ x_1 - x_3 \leq 2 \end{array} \right\} x_j - x_i \leq w_{ij}$$

$$\begin{array}{ll} x_1 = 3 & \\ x_2 = 0 & \\ x_3 = 2 & \end{array}$$

### Solution:

November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.34



## Solving a system of difference constraints

Linear programming where each row of  $A$  contains exactly one 1, one  $-1$ , and the rest 0's.

### Example:

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} x_1 - x_2 \leq 3 \\ x_2 - x_3 \leq -2 \\ x_1 - x_3 \leq 2 \end{array} \right\} x_j - x_i \leq w_{ij}$$

### Solution:



## Unsatisfiable constraints

**Theorem.** If the constraint graph contains a negative-weight cycle, then the system of differences is unsatisfiable.

### Constraint graph:

$$x_j - x_i \leq w_{ij} \Rightarrow v_i \xrightarrow{w_{ij}} v_j$$

(The “ $A$ ” matrix has dimensions  $|E| \times |V|$ .)

November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.35

November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.36



## Unsatisfiable constraints

**Theorem.** If the constraint graph contains a negative-weight cycle, then the system of differences is unsatisfiable.

*Proof.* Suppose that the negative-weight cycle is  $v_1 \rightarrow v_2 \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow v_k \rightarrow v_1$ . Then, we have

$$\begin{aligned}x_2 - x_1 &\leq w_{12} \\x_3 - x_2 &\leq w_{23} \\&\vdots \\x_k - x_{k-1} &\leq w_{k-1,k} \\x_1 - x_k &\leq w_{k1}\end{aligned}$$

November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.37



## Unsatisfiable constraints

**Theorem.** If the constraint graph contains a negative-weight cycle, then the system of differences is unsatisfiable.

*Proof.* Suppose that the negative-weight cycle is  $v_1 \rightarrow v_2 \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow v_k \rightarrow v_1$ . Then, we have

$$\begin{aligned}x_2 - x_1 &\leq w_{12} \\x_3 - x_2 &\leq w_{23} \\&\vdots \\x_k - x_{k-1} &\leq w_{k-1,k} \\x_1 - x_k &\leq w_{k1}\end{aligned}$$

$$\frac{0}{\leq \text{ weight of cycle}} < 0$$

Therefore, no values for the  $x_i$  can satisfy the constraints.  $\square$

November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.38



## Satisfying the constraints

**Theorem.** Suppose no negative-weight cycle exists in the constraint graph. Then, the constraints are satisfiable.

November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

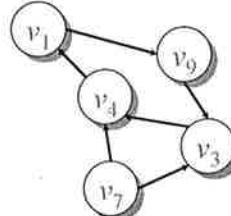
L18.39



## Satisfying the constraints

**Theorem.** Suppose no negative-weight cycle exists in the constraint graph. Then, the constraints are satisfiable.

*Proof.* Add a new vertex  $s$  to  $V$  with a 0-weight edge to each vertex  $v_i \in V$ .



November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

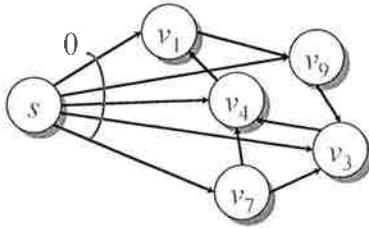
L18.40



## Satisfying the constraints

**Theorem.** Suppose no negative-weight cycle exists in the constraint graph. Then, the constraints are satisfiable.

*Proof.* Add a new vertex  $s$  to  $V$  with a 0-weight edge to each vertex  $v_i \in V$ .



### Note:

No negative-weight cycles introduced  $\Rightarrow$  shortest paths exist.

November 16, 2005

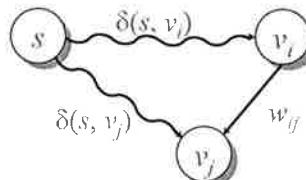
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.41



## Proof (continued)

**Claim:** The assignment  $x_i = \delta(s, v_i)$  solves the constraints. Consider any constraint  $x_j - x_i \leq w_{ij}$ , and consider the shortest paths from  $s$  to  $v_j$  and  $v_i$ :



The triangle inequality gives us  $\delta(s, v_j) \leq \delta(s, v_i) + w_{ji}$ . Since  $x_j = \delta(s, v_j)$  and  $x_i = \delta(s, v_i)$ , the constraint  $x_j - x_i \leq w_{ji}$  is satisfied.  $\square$

November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.42



## Bellman-Ford and linear programming

**Corollary.** The Bellman-Ford algorithm can solve a system of  $m$  difference constraints on  $n$  variables in  $O(mn)$  time.  $\square$

Single-source shortest paths is a simple LP problem.

In fact, Bellman-Ford maximizes  $x_1 + x_2 + \dots + x_n$  subject to the constraints  $x_j - x_i \leq w_{ij}$  and  $x_i \leq 0$  (exercise).

Bellman-Ford also minimizes  $\max_i\{x_i\} - \min_i\{x_i\}$  (exercise).

November 16, 2005

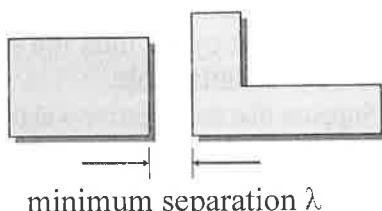
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.43



## Application to VLSI layout compaction

*Integrated  
circuit  
features:*



minimum separation  $\lambda$

**Problem:** Compact (in one dimension) the space between the features of a VLSI layout without bringing any features too close together.

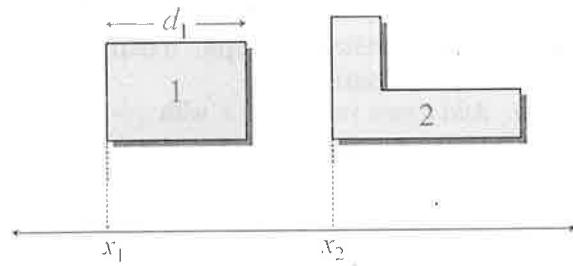
November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.44



## VLSI layout compaction



**Constraint:**  $x_2 - x_1 \geq d_1 + \lambda$

Bellman-Ford minimizes  $\max_i\{x_i\} - \min_i\{x_i\}$ , which compacts the layout in the  $x$ -dimension.

November 16, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L18.45

# Introduction to Algorithms

6.046J/18.401J



## LECTURE 19

### Shortest Paths III

- All-pairs shortest paths
- Matrix-multiplication algorithm
- Floyd-Warshall algorithm
- Johnson's algorithm

Prof. Charles E. Leiserson

November 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L19.1



## Shortest paths

### Single-source shortest paths

- Nonnegative edge weights
  - Dijkstra's algorithm:  $O(E + V \lg V)$
- General
  - Bellman-Ford algorithm:  $O(VE)$
- DAG
  - One pass of Bellman-Ford:  $O(V + E)$

November 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L19.2



## Shortest paths

### Single-source shortest paths

- Nonnegative edge weights
  - Dijkstra's algorithm:  $O(E + V \lg V)$
- General
  - Bellman-Ford:  $O(VE)$
- DAG
  - One pass of Bellman-Ford:  $O(V + E)$

### All-pairs shortest paths

- Nonnegative edge weights
  - Dijkstra's algorithm  $|V|$  times:  $O(VE + V^2 \lg V)$
- General
  - Three algorithms today.

November 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L19.3



## All-pairs shortest paths

**Input:** Digraph  $G = (V, E)$ , where  $V = \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ , with edge-weight function  $w : E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ .

**Output:**  $n \times n$  matrix of shortest-path lengths  $\delta(i, j)$  for all  $i, j \in V$ .

November 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L19.4



## All-pairs shortest paths

**Input:** Digraph  $G = (V, E)$ , where  $V = \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ , with edge-weight function  $w : E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ .

**Output:**  $n \times n$  matrix of shortest-path lengths  $\delta(i, j)$  for all  $i, j \in V$ .

### IDEA:

- Run Bellman-Ford once from each vertex.
- Time =  $O(V^2 E)$ .
- Dense graph ( $n^2$  edges)  $\Rightarrow \Theta(n^4)$  time in the worst case.

*Good first try!*

November 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L19.5



## Dynamic programming

Consider the  $n \times n$  adjacency matrix  $A = (a_{ij})$  of the digraph, and define

$d_{ij}^{(m)}$  = weight of a shortest path from  $i$  to  $j$  that uses at most  $m$  edges.

**Claim:** We have

$$d_{ij}^{(0)} = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } i = j, \\ \infty & \text{if } i \neq j; \end{cases}$$

and for  $m = 1, 2, \dots, n - 1$ ,

$$d_{ij}^{(m)} = \min_k \{ d_{ik}^{(m-1)} + a_{kj} \}.$$

November 21, 2005

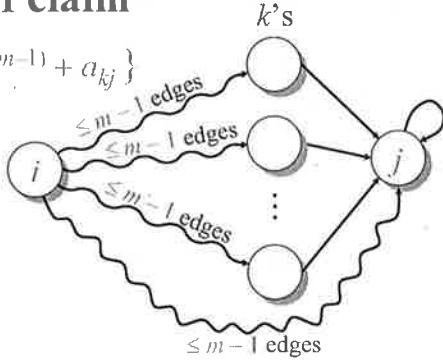
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L19.6



## Proof of claim

$$d_{ij}^{(m)} = \min_k \{ d_{ik}^{(m-1)} + a_{kj} \}$$



November 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L19.7



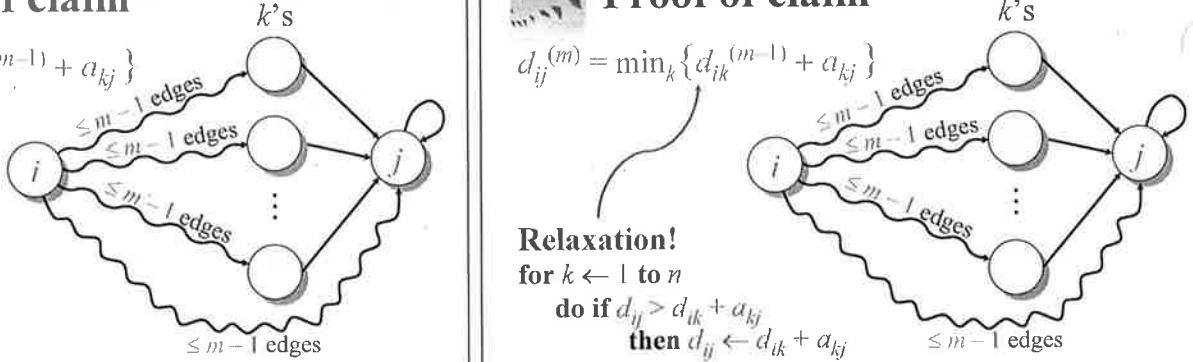
## Proof of claim

$$d_{ij}^{(m)} = \min_k \{ d_{ik}^{(m-1)} + a_{kj} \}$$

Relaxation!

for  $k \leftarrow 1$  to  $n$ 

```
do if $d_{ij} > d_{ik} + a_{kj}$
 then $d_{ij} \leftarrow d_{ik} + a_{kj}$
```



November 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L19.8

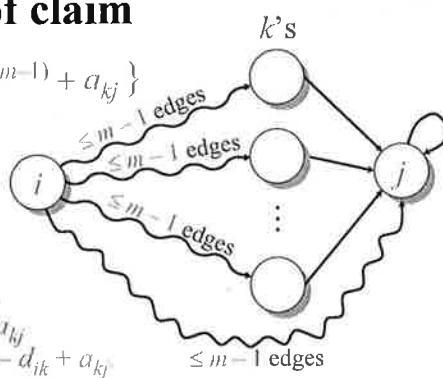


## Proof of claim

$$d_{ij}^{(m)} = \min_k \{ d_{ik}^{(m-1)} + a_{kj} \}$$

Relaxation!  
for  $k \leftarrow 1$  to  $n$

```
do if $d_{ij} > d_{ik} + a_{kj}$
 then $d_{ij} \leftarrow d_{ik} + a_{kj}$
```



Note: No negative-weight cycles implies

$$\delta(i, j) = d_{ij}^{(n-1)} = d_{ij}^{(n)} = d_{ij}^{(n+1)} = \dots$$

November 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L19.9



## Matrix multiplication

Compute  $C = A \cdot B$ , where  $C$ ,  $A$ , and  $B$  are  $n \times n$  matrices:

$$c_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^n a_{ik} b_{kj}.$$

Time =  $\Theta(n^3)$  using the standard algorithm.

November 21, 2005 Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson L19.10



## Matrix multiplication

Compute  $C = A \cdot B$ , where  $C$ ,  $A$ , and  $B$  are  $n \times n$  matrices:

$$c_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^n a_{ik} b_{kj}.$$

Time =  $\Theta(n^3)$  using the standard algorithm.

What if we map “+” → “min” and “.” → “+”? 

$$c_{ij} = \min_k \{ a_{ik} + b_{kj} \}.$$

Thus,  $D^{(n)} = D^{(n-1)} \times A$ .

$$\text{Identity matrix } I = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \infty & \infty & \infty \\ \infty & 0 & \infty & \infty \\ \infty & \infty & 0 & \infty \\ \infty & \infty & \infty & 0 \end{pmatrix} = D^0 = (d_{ij}^{(0)}).$$

November 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L19.11

November 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L19.12



## Matrix multiplication (continued)

The  $(\min, +)$  multiplication is *associative*, and with the real numbers, it forms an algebraic structure called a *closed semiring*.

Consequently, we can compute

$$\begin{aligned} D^{(1)} &= D^{(0)} \cdot A = A^1 \\ D^{(2)} &= D^{(1)} \cdot A = A^2 \\ &\vdots \\ D^{(n-1)} &= D^{(n-2)} \cdot A = A^{n-1}, \end{aligned}$$

yielding  $D^{(n-1)} = (\delta(i, j))$ .

Time =  $\Theta(n \cdot n^3) = \Theta(n^4)$ . No better than  $n \times$  B-F.

November 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L19.13



## Improved matrix multiplication algorithm

**Repeated squaring:**  $A^{2k} = A^k \times A^k$ .

Compute  $\underbrace{A^2, A^4, \dots, A^{2^{\lceil \lg(n-1) \rceil}}}_{O(\lg n) \text{ squarings}}$ .

**Note:**  $A^{n-1} = A^n = A^{n+1} = \dots$

Time =  $\Theta(n^3 \lg n)$ .

To detect negative-weight cycles, check the diagonal for negative values in  $O(n)$  additional time.

November 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

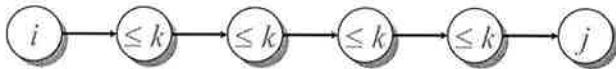
L19.14



## Floyd-Warshall algorithm

Also dynamic programming, but faster!

Define  $c_{ij}^{(k)}$  = weight of a shortest path from  $i$  to  $j$  with intermediate vertices belonging to the set  $\{1, 2, \dots, k\}$ .



Thus,  $\delta(i, j) = c_{ij}^{(n)}$ . Also,  $c_{ij}^{(0)} = a_{ij}$ .

November 21, 2005

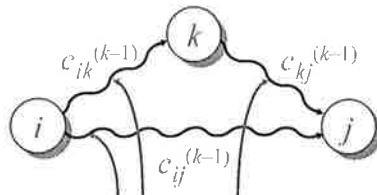
Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L19.15



## Floyd-Warshall recurrence

$$c_{ij}^{(k)} = \min_k \{c_{ij}^{(k-1)}, c_{ik}^{(k-1)} + c_{kj}^{(k-1)}\}$$



intermediate vertices in  $\{1, 2, \dots, k\}$

November 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L19.16



## Pseudocode for Floyd-Warshall

```
for k ← 1 to n
 do for i ← 1 to n
 do for j ← 1 to n
 do if $c_{ij} > c_{ik} + c_{kj}$
 then $c_{ij} \leftarrow c_{ik} + c_{kj}$ } relaxation
```

### Notes:

- Okay to omit superscripts, since extra relaxations can't hurt.
- Runs in  $\Theta(n^3)$  time.
- Simple to code.
- Efficient in practice.

November 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L19.17



## Transitive closure of a directed graph

Compute  $t_{ij}^{(k)} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if there exists a path from } i \text{ to } j, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$

**IDEA:** Use Floyd-Warshall, but with  $(\vee, \wedge)$  instead of  $(\min, +)$ :

$$t_{ij}^{(k)} = t_{ij}^{(k-1)} \vee (t_{ik}^{(k-1)} \wedge t_{kj}^{(k-1)}).$$

Time =  $\Theta(n^3)$ .

November 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L19.18



## Graph reweighting

**Theorem.** Given a function  $h : V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ , *reweight* each edge  $(u, v) \in E$  by  $w_h(u, v) = w(u, v) + h(u) - h(v)$ . Then, for any two vertices, all paths between them are reweighted by the same amount.

November 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L19.19



## Graph reweighting

**Theorem.** Given a function  $h : V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ , *reweight* each edge  $(u, v) \in E$  by  $w_h(u, v) = w(u, v) + h(u) - h(v)$ . Then, for any two vertices, all paths between them are reweighted by the same amount.

*Proof.* Let  $p = v_1 \rightarrow v_2 \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow v_k$  be a path in  $G$ . We have

$$\begin{aligned} w_h(p) &= \sum_{i=1}^{k-1} w_h(v_i, v_{i+1}) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^{k-1} (w(v_i, v_{i+1}) + h(v_i) - h(v_{i+1})) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^{k-1} w(v_i, v_{i+1}) + h(v_1) - h(v_k) \quad \text{Same amount!} \\ &= w(p) + h(v_1) - h(v_k). \quad \square \end{aligned}$$

November 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L19.20



## Shortest paths in reweighted graphs

**Corollary.**  $\delta_h(u, v) = \delta(u, v) + h(u) - h(v)$ .  $\square$

November 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L19.21



## Shortest paths in reweighted graphs

**Corollary.**  $\delta_h(u, v) = \delta(u, v) + h(u) - h(v)$ .  $\square$

**IDEA:** Find a function  $h : V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that  $w_h(u, v) \geq 0$  for all  $(u, v) \in E$ . Then, run Dijkstra's algorithm from each vertex on the reweighted graph.

**NOTE:**  $w_h(u, v) \geq 0$  iff  $h(v) - h(u) \leq w(u, v)$ .

November 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L19.22



## Johnson's algorithm

1. Find a function  $h : V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that  $w_h(u, v) \geq 0$  for all  $(u, v) \in E$  by using Bellman-Ford to solve the difference constraints  $h(v) - h(u) \leq w(u, v)$ , or determine that a negative-weight cycle exists.
    - Time =  $O(VE)$ .
  2. Run Dijkstra's algorithm using  $w_h$  from each vertex  $u \in V$  to compute  $\delta_h(u, v)$  for all  $v \in V$ .
    - Time =  $O(VE + V^2 \lg V)$ .
  3. For each  $(u, v) \in V \times V$ , compute
 
$$\delta(u, v) = \delta_h(u, v) - h(u) + h(v).$$
    - Time =  $O(V^2)$ .
- Total time =  $O(VE + V^2 \lg V)$ .

November 21, 2005

Copyright © 2001-5 by Erik D. Demaine and Charles E. Leiserson

L19.23